



### **ON-BOARD DIAGNOSTICS**

# **V6 and V8 Engine Management**

## **Vehicle Coverage:**

X-Type 2.5L V6 and 3.0L V6 2001 model year onwards

X-Type 2.0L V6 2001 model year onwards

S-Type 3.0L V6, 4.2L V8 (normally aspirated and supercharged) from 2002 model year onwards

XK Range 4.2L V8 (normally aspirated and supercharged) from 2003 model year onwards

New XJ 4.2L V8 2003 model year onwards.

Includes Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) monitors from 2004 model year

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 1 of 152



## 1 Contents

| 1 Conten  | ts   | 2  |
|-----------|--|----|
| 2 OBDII S | Systems  | 8  |
| 2.1 Ge    | eneric OBD-II Drive Cycle                          | 8  |
|           | Management System                                  |    |
| 3.1.1     | Fuel Injection                                     | 9  |
| 3.1.2     | Ignition   | 10 |
| 3.1.3     | Variable Valve Timing (Normally Aspirated Engines) | 10 |
| 3.1.4     | Variable Air Intake System (V6 Engines)            | 10 |
| 3.1.5     | Exhaust Gas Recirculation (V8 Engines)             | 10 |
| 3.1.6     | Electronic Throttle Control                        | 10 |
| 3.1.7     | Idle Speed Control                                 | 11 |
| 3.1.8     | Vehicle Speed Control                              | 11 |
| 4 Sensors | s and Actuators                                    | 12 |
| 5 Mode \$ | 506 Data   | 14 |
| 6 On Boa  | ard Monitoring                                     | 16 |
| 6.1 Ca    | atalyst Efficiency Monitor                         | 16 |
| 6.1.1     | Monitoring Structure                               |    |
| 6.1.2     | Drive Cycle Information                            | 20 |
| 6.2 Mis   | sfire Monitor                                      |    |
| 6.2.1     | Monitoring Structure                               |    |
| 6.2.1     | Misfire Detection                                  |    |
| 6.2.2     | Drive Cycle Information                            |    |
| 6.3 He    | eated Oxygen Sensor Monitor                        |    |
| 6.3.1     | Downstream Oxygen Sensors High/Low Input Monitor   |    |
| 6.3.2     | Monitoring Structure                               |    |
| 6.3.3     | Downstream Oxygen Sensors Heater Circuit High      | 36 |
| 6.3.4     | Monitoring Structure                               | 36 |
| 6.3.5     | Downstream Oxygen Sensors Heater Circuit Low       | 37 |
| 6.3.6     | Monitoring Structure                               |    |
| 6.3.7     | Downstream Oxygen Sensors No Activity Detected     | 37 |
| 6.3.8     | Monitoring Structure                               |    |
| 6.3.9     | Upstream Oxygen Sensors Circuit                    |    |
| 6.3.10    | Monitoring Structure                               |    |
| 6.3.11    | Upstream Oxygen Sensors Slow Response              |    |
| 6.3.12    | Monitoring Structure                               |    |
| 6.3.13    | Upstream Oxygen Sensors Heater Circuit             | 48 |



| 6.3.14 | Monitoring Structure                                      | 48 |
|--------|---|----|
| 6.3.15 | Drive Cycle Information                                   | 49 |
| 6.4 EI | lectronic Control Module                                  | 50 |
| 6.4.1  | Monitoring Structure                                      | 50 |
| 6.4.2  | Drive Cycle Information                                   | 50 |
| 6.5 Fu | uel System Monitor  | 51 |
| 6.5.1  | Monitoring Structure                                      |    |
| 6.5.2  | Fuel System Secondary Trim                                | 57 |
| 6.5.3  | Monitoring Structure                                      | 57 |
| 6.5.4  | Drive Cycle Information                                   |    |
| 6.6 Ev | vaporative Emissions System Monitor                       | 60 |
| 6.6.1  | Leak Test Operation                                       | 60 |
| 6.6.2  | Monitoring Structure                                      |    |
| 6.6.3  | Drive Cycle Information                                   |    |
| 6.7 Fu | uel Tank Pressure Sensor Circuit                          |    |
| 6.7.1  | High/Low Input Failure                                    |    |
| 6.7.2  | Range/Performance Failure                                 | 73 |
| 6.7.3  | Monitoring Structure                                      |    |
| 6.7.4  | Drive Cycle Information                                   |    |
|        | xhaust Gas Recirculation System Monitor (V8 Engines)      | 74 |
| 6.8.1  | High/Low Input Failure                                    |    |
| 6.8.2  | Exhaust Gas Recirculation Valve Range/Performance Failure |    |
| 6.8.3  | Monitoring Structure                                      |    |
| 6.8.4  | Drive Cycle Information                                   |    |
|        | rankshaft/Camshaft Position Sensor                        |    |
| 6.9.1  | Open and Short Circuit Detection of the Crank Signal      |    |
| 6.9.2  | Intermittent Crank Failure Detection                      |    |
| 6.9.3  | Crank Request Signal High Input Monitor                   |    |
| 6.9.4  | Open/Short Circuit  |    |
| 6.9.5  | Missing Phase Detection                                   |    |
| 6.9.6  | Monitoring Structure                                      |    |
| 6.9.7  | Drive Cycle Information                                   |    |
| 6.10   | Mass Airflow Sensor and Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor |    |
| 6.10.1 |   | 79 |
| 6.10.2 |   |    |
| 6.10.3 |   |    |
| 6.10.4 |   |    |
|        | Barometric Pressure Sensor                                |    |
| 6.11.1 | High/Low Input Failure                                    | 89 |
|        |   |    |



| 6.11.2 | Range/Performance Failure                                      | 89   |
|--------|--|------|
| 6.11.3 |  |      |
| 6.11.4 | Drive Cycle Information  | 90   |
| 6.12   | Intake Air Temperature Sensor                                  | 9    |
| 6.12.1 | High/Low Input Failure   | 9    |
| 6.12.2 | Range/Performance Check 1                                      | 9    |
| 6.12.3 | Range/Performance Check 2                                      | 9    |
| 6.12.4 |  |      |
| 6.12.5 |  |      |
| 6.13   | Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Monitor (V8 Supercharged Only) | 94   |
| 6.13.1 |  | 94   |
| 6.13.2 |  |      |
| 6.13.3 |  |      |
| 6.13.4 |  |      |
| 6.13.5 |  |      |
| 6.13.6 |  |      |
| 6.14   | Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor                              |      |
| 6.14.1 |  |      |
| 6.14.2 |  |      |
| 6.14.3 |  |      |
| 6.14.4 | ,  |      |
|        | Thermostat Monitor   |      |
| 6.15.1 |  |      |
| 6.15.2 | ,  |      |
|        | Throttle Position Sensor                                       |      |
| 6.16.1 |  |      |
| 6.16.2 |  |      |
|        | Engine Oil Temperature Sensor                                  | .10  |
| 6.17.1 |  |      |
| 6.17.2 |  |      |
| 6.17.3 |  |      |
| 6.17.4 |  |      |
|        | Fuel Rail Temperature Sensor                                   |      |
| 6.18.1 |  |      |
| 6.18.2 |  |      |
| 6.18.3 |  |      |
| 6.18.4 |  |      |
|        | Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor                                      |      |
| 6.19.1 | High/Low Input Failure   | .109 |



| 6.19.2 | Stuck Detection                                | 109 |
|--------|--|-----|
| 6.19.3 | B Offset Detection                             | 109 |
| 6.19.4 | Monitoring Structure                           | 110 |
| 6.19.5 | 5 Drive Cycle Information                      | 110 |
| 6.20   | Fuel Injectors                                 | 111 |
| 6.20.1 | Monitoring Structure                           | 111 |
| 6.20.2 | 2 Drive Cycle Information                      | 112 |
| 6.21   | Fuel Pumps                                     |     |
| 6.21.1 | Primary Fuel Pump - No Commands Received       | 113 |
| 6.21.2 | Primary Fuel Pump - Not Working When Requested | 113 |
| 6.21.3 | B Primary Fuel Pump Circuit High/Low Fault     | 113 |
| 6.21.4 |  |     |
| 6.21.5 |  |     |
| 6.21.6 |  |     |
| 6.21.7 | ·  |     |
| 6.22   | Fuel Level Sensor                              |     |
| 6.22.1 |  |     |
| 6.22.2 | Puel Level Noisy Monitor                       |     |
| 6.22.3 |  |     |
| 6.22.4 | ,  |     |
| 6.23   | Knock Sensor                                   |     |
| 6.23.1 |  |     |
|        | 2 Knock Sensor Processor Failure               |     |
| 6.23.3 |  |     |
| 6.23.4 |  |     |
| 6.24   | Variable Valve Timing                          |     |
| 6.24.1 |  |     |
| 6.24.2 |  |     |
| 6.25   | Ignition Amplifiers/Coils                      |     |
| 6.25.1 |  |     |
| 6.25.2 |  |     |
|        | Charge Air Cooler Water Pump                   |     |
| 6.26.1 |  |     |
| 6.26.2 |  |     |
|        | Idle Speed Control                             |     |
|        | Drive Cycle Information                        |     |
|        | Starter Relay                                  |     |
|        | Monitoring Structure                           |     |
| 6.28.2 | 2 Drive Cycle Information                      | 126 |



| 6.29   | Air Conditioning Clutch Relay             |      |
|--------|---|------|
| 6.29.1 |   | .127 |
| 6.29.2 | Drive Cycle Information                   | .127 |
| 6.30   | Park/Neutral Switch                       |      |
| 6.30.1 | Monitoring Structure                      | .128 |
| 6.30.2 | Drive Cycle Information                   | .128 |
| 6.31   | Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor Monitor | .129 |
| 6.31.1 | Monitoring Structure                      | .129 |
| 6.31.2 |   |      |
| 6.32   | Throttle Control                          | .131 |
| 6.32.1 | Sensor Power Supply Monitor               | .131 |
| 6.32.2 | Analogue Ground Monitor                   | .131 |
| 6.32.3 | Throttle Actuator Control Monitor         | .132 |
| 6.32.4 |   |      |
| 6.32.5 | Throttle Motor Relay Driver Monitor       | .132 |
| 6.32.6 |   |      |
| 6.32.7 | Throttle Limp Home Spring Monitor         | .133 |
| 6.32.8 | Throttle Watchdog Monitor                 | .133 |
| 6.32.9 |   |      |
| 6.32.1 |   |      |
| 6.33   | Intake Manifold Tuning Valve System       |      |
| 6.33.1 | Monitoring Structure                      |      |
| 6.33.2 | ,   |      |
| 6.34   | Generator Monitor                         |      |
| 6.34.1 |   |      |
| 6.34.2 | Generator Field Line Failure (V6 Only)    | .138 |
| 6.34.3 |   |      |
| 6.34.4 |   |      |
| 6.34.5 |   |      |
| 6.35   | Engine Control Module                     |      |
| 6.35.1 |   |      |
| 6.35.2 |   |      |
| 6.35.3 |   |      |
| 6.35.4 |   |      |
| 6.35.5 |   |      |
| 6.35.6 |   |      |
| 6.35.7 |   |      |
| 6.35.8 | ,   |      |
| 6.36   | Communications Network Monitors           | .144 |



|   | 6.36.1    | Monitoring Structure  | .144 |
|---|-----------|---|------|
|   | 6.36.2    | Monitoring Structure  Drive Cycle Information                 | .145 |
| 7 | Anti-lock | k Braking System  | .146 |
|   | 7.1 Wh    | eel Speed Sensors   | 146  |
|   |           | Wheel Speed Sensor Monitoring (XJ Range, XK Range and S-Type) |      |
|   | 7.1.2     | Monitoring Structure  | .148 |
|   | 7.1.3     | Drive Cycle Information                                       | 148  |
|   | 7.1.4     | Wheel Speed Sensor Monitoring (X-Type)                        | .149 |
|   | 7.1.5     | Monitoring Structure  | 150  |
|   | 7.1.6     | Drive Cycle Information                                       | .151 |
|   | 7.2 Cor   | ntrol Module Failure  | .152 |
|   | 7.2.1     | Monitoring Structure  | .152 |
|   | 7.2.2     | Drive Cycle Information                                       |      |



#### 2 OBDII Systems

California On-Board Diagnostics II (OBD) applies to all gasoline engine vehicles up to 14,000 lbs. Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) starting in the 1996 model year and all diesel engine vehicles up to 14,000 lbs. GVWR starting in the 1997 model year.

"Green States" are states in the Northeast that chose to adopt California emission regulations, starting in the 1998 model year. At this time, Massachusetts, New York, Vermont and Maine are Green States. Green States receive California certified vehicles for passenger cars and light trucks up to 6,000 lbs. GVWR.

The National Low Emissions Vehicle program (NLEV) requires compliance with California OBDII, including 0.020" Evaporative Emissions (EVAP) system monitoring requirements. The NLEV program applies to passenger cars and light trucks up to 6,000 lbs. GVWR nationwide from 2001 model year through 2003 model year.

Federal OBD applies to all gasoline engine vehicles up to 8,500 lbs. GVWR starting in the 1996 model year and all diesel engine vehicles up to 8,500 lbs. GVWR starting in the 1997 model year.

OBDII system implementation and operation is described in the remainder of this document.

#### 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle

For each monitoring strategy, the OBĎ-II drive cycle to be used is stated. The purpose of the drive cycle is to run the onboard diagnostics monitoring strategy under consideration. The number of drive cycles that must be completed in order to illuminate the MIL is given in the Monitoring Operation table for each monitoring strategy. The drive cycle should be performed after any Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTCs) have been erased from the ECM's memory, or after the battery has been disconnected.

Unless stated otherwise, the following generic drive cycle will apply:

Drive cycle under review.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 8 of 152



#### 3 Engine Management System

The Engine Control Module (ECM) controls the engine management system. The system consists of an ECM and a number of sensing and actuating devices. The sensors supply the ECM with input signals, which relate to engine operating conditions and driver requirements. The ECM uses calibrated data-tables and maps to evaluate the sensor information. The ECM then uses the results to command an appropriate response from the actuating devices. The system provides the necessary engine control accuracy and adaptability to:

- Minimize exhaust emissions and fuel consumption.
- Provide optimum driver control under all conditions.
- · Minimize evaporative fuel emissions.
- Provide system diagnostics when malfunctions occur.

In addition to these functions the ECM also interfaces with other vehicle systems through the Controller Area Network (CAN) communications network.

The 32-bit ECM is at the center of the system and provides the overall control. Its functions are listed below, each of which are dependent on the engine and vehicle state at any moment of time and driver requirements.

- Starting: Ensures that conditions are safe to crank the engine.
- Engine: Controls the rate of air and fuel flow into the cylinders; adjusts the intake manifold volume; controls the ignition and intake camshaft timing.
- Fuel supply: Controls the operation of the fuel pumps and the EVAP canister purge valve.
- Cooling: Controls the engine cooling fans.
- Battery: Optimizes the battery charging conditions.
- Air Conditioning (A/C) and screen heater: Controls the speed of the engine when these additional loads are added, also disables the A/C when it is beneficial to reduce the load on the engine.
- Speed control: Provides the option to maintain a fixed vehicle speed without driver intervention.
- Robustness: Maintains engine running condition under intermittent or permanent single point failures on any sensors or actuators fitted to the system, and records Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTCs) of these failures for system diagnosis.
- Diagnosis: Notifies the driver when a system malfunction occurs and records data for system diagnosis.

#### 3.1.1 Fuel Injection

The ECM controls one injector per cylinder in sequential operation. The size of the injector used is so that stoichiometric control is possible at minimum load with allowance for EVAP canister purge valve correction, and at maximum load to provide sufficient fuel flow at all engine speeds. The timing of injector firing, relative to intake valve closing, during normal starting and running conditions is optimized to provide the best compromise between emissions and performance, time to first-ignition and smooth engine operation at start-up, for all engine conditions at all temperatures. The mass of fuel per-injection is derived from a calculation based on a ratiometric match to the metered airflow.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 9 of 152



The ECM is capable of adapting to fuel system tolerances and engine internal wear under all operating conditions. The ECM continually monitors the differential pressure between the fuel rail and plenum, and uses this value to calculate the injector pulse width with the required mass of fuel per-injection. The ECM also continually monitors the temperature of the fuel being injected into the engine and provides compensation for the changing flow characteristics of the fuel system at different temperatures. By monitoring the battery supply voltage the ECM can ensure that the fuel supply to the engine is unaffected by voltage fluctuation.

#### 3.1.2 Ignition

The system uses one ignition coil per-cylinder. A base ignition map is provided so that the engine can be optimized for emissions, fuel economy, performance and avoidance of cylinder knock throughout its speed and load range. Ignition timing during starting is used during engine cranking and under speed modes to provide the best compromise between emissions, time to first ignition and smooth engine operation at start up, at all temperatures. Provision is made to compensate for the effect of changing air intake temperature on the combustion detonation limit. The system contains the necessary hardware for the detection of combustion knock within the engine cylinders; the ECM uses this information to gradually adjust the ignition timing until the combustion knock is at a safe and inaudible level.

#### 3.1.3 Variable Valve Timing (Normally Aspirated Engines)

The ECM controls the fully variable phase change system, which acts on the intake camshafts. The target positions of both camshafts are optimized to provide the best compromise between performance, refinement, fuel economy and emissions. During transient operation, the rate of change of the Camshaft Position (CMP) is controlled to optimize drivability. Operation of the Variable Valve Timing (VVT) will be restricted if environmental conditions exist that could affect normal operation of the VVT, for example very low ambient temperatures. Provision is made to ensure that the intake camshafts are restrained in the retard position during engine start. The ECM will also detect a variable valve timing mechanical malfunction, and act to compensate for the malfunction.

### 3.1.4 Variable Air Intake System (V6 Engines)

The ECM controls two intake manifold tuning valves. Each valve is a two positional device; the switching point of the valve is dependant on engine speed and a definable change in engine performance. The valve switching points are optimized for maximum torque in the wide-open Throttle Position (TP).

#### 3.1.5 Exhaust Gas Recirculation (V8 Engines)

The ECM controls the flow of exhaust gases to reduce oxides of nitrogen in emissions by re-circulating metered amounts of exhaust gas into the intake of the engine. This lowers the combustion temperature, limiting the formation of nitrogen oxides. The Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) flow is optimized for fuel economy, emissions and drivability for all engine-operating conditions.

#### 3.1.6 Electronic Throttle Control

The electronic throttle controls the airflow into the engine under closed loop feedback control of the ECM. The correct throttle disc position is calculated as a function of driver demand and of the engine's momentary operating mode. A fail safe system is incorporated that complies with legislative requirements, including mechanical limp-home operation.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 10 of 152



### 3.1.7 Idle Speed Control

Idle speed is dependent on Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) and gear selection (neutral or drive). Idle speed is optimized for combustion stability, idle quality, Idle Speed Control (ISC) capability and fuel economy at all operating conditions. Compensations to the idle speed will be made for conditions, such as variable ambient air temperature, to increase idle speed to satisfy charging system requirements.

#### 3.1.8 Vehicle Speed Control

The engine management system incorporates a speed control system. This enables the driver to set a speed, and control and maintain the speed of the vehicle without having to operate the accelerator pedal. The speed control switches are momentary action switches, mounted on the steering wheel. The function of the switches is organized so that a function relating to a switch priority always overrides a function relating to a lower priority switch. The switch priority is:

- 1. Cancel
- 2. Set
- 3. Resume

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 11 of 152



### 4 Sensors and Actuators

The following table defines the function of the engine mounted sensors and actuators:

| Component   | Function   |
|---|--|
| Fuel injectors  | Delivers fuel to the engine cylinder intake ports in sequential order. There are 12 fuel injection holes per cylinder, delivering fuel droplets as small as 60 microns in diameter. This size of fuel droplet reduces fuel wetting of the intake port and promotes excellent fuel air mixing. Reducing noxious emissions and improving fuel economy while the engine is warming up.  |
| On-plug ignition coil                                   | The ECM controls one coil per spark plug in sequential order. The ignition coil provides the energy to the spark plug to ignite the air fuel mixture in the engine cylinder. The ignition coil works on the principle of 'mutual induction'. By closing and then opening the ignition coil primary circuit, the primary current increases, and then suddenly decreases to induce the high voltage in the secondary circuit needed to fire the spark plug.  |
| CMP sensor  | Signals from the CMP sensors are used to synchronize the ECM to the engine cycle during engine starting. For example, whether the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor is indicating an induction or firing stroke. The position of both intake camshafts is monitored to allow the ECM to control the phase of the intake camshafts relative to the position of the crankshaft. On engines with VVT, the CMP sensor provides feedback control on the intake camshaft's position relative to the position of the crankshaft and exhaust camshafts. |
| Oil control solenoid - VVT (normally aspirated engines) | The oil control solenoid is a hydraulic actuator, which advances and retards the intake camshaft timing, thereby altering the camshaft-to-crankshaft phasing.  |
| Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor                 | The manifold absolute pressure sensor is used for EGR diagnostic testing only.   |
| Knock sensor  | The knock sensors produce a voltage signal with respect to the engine's combustion level. The knock sensor detects and reports combustion knock within the engine cylinders. The ECM uses this information to gradually adjust the ignition timing until the combustion knock is at a safe and inaudible level. The knock control system cannot advance the ignition past the mapped values; it retards the ignition timing to reduce combustion knock and then advances to its original value.  |
| Fuel rail pressure sensor                               | Continuously monitors the fuel pressure between the fuel rail and plenum, this value is used by the ECM as one of its factors to calculate the injector pulse-width required to deliver the correct mass of fuel per injection. The ECM also uses this information to demand a specific fuel flow rate from the fuel pump via the fuel pump module.  |
| Fuel rail temperature sensor                            | The fuel rail temperature sensor continuously monitors the temperature of fuel being injected into the engine; this value is used by the ECM to provide compensation for the changing flow characteristics of the fuel system with temperature. The ECM therefore ensures that engine performance is unaffected by temperature changes in the fuel supply.   |
| Intake manifold tuning valves (V6 engines)              | The intake manifold tuning valves are a two positional 'open or close' device used to create a variable air intake system. The intake manifold tuning valve positions are switched, via signals from the ECM, to optimize torque across the engine speed and load range. The intake manifold tuning valves work in conjunction with the operation of the throttle body sensors.  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 12 of 152



| Component                         | Function  |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Throttle body assembly            | The throttle body controls the airflow into the engine by use of the throttle motor and Throttle Position (TP) sensor.        |
|                                   | Throttle-disc position is operated by the throttle motor using signals received from the Accelerator Pedal Position (APP)     |
|                                   | sensor, via the ECM. The ECM, via the TP sensor, monitors throttle disc angle. The ECM on application of external loads,      |
|                                   | for example the A/C compressor, makes compensation to the throttle disc angle.  |
| Mass Airflow (MAF) sensor with    | The MAF sensor informs the ECM of the rate of airflow entering the engine by producing a voltage, which increases as the      |
| integrated Intake Air Temperature | rate of airflow increases. The MAF sensor also takes into account the density of air entering the engine so it is possible to |
| (IAT) sensor                      | maintain the required air fuel ratio, and compensate for variations in atmospheric pressure and temperatures. The integral    |
|                                   | IAT sensor measures the temperature of the air entering the intake system. The ECM uses this information to compensate        |
|                                   | for higher than normal IAT upon combustion detonation.  |
| CKP sensor                        | The CKP sensor is an inductive pulse generator, which scans protrusions on a pulse ring, to inform the ECM of the             |
|                                   | crankshaft's position and engine speed.   |
| Engine Coolant Temperature        | The thermistor type sensor provides an input signal to the ECM, which is proportional to the temperature of the engine        |
| sensor                            | coolant being circulated around the coolant system.   |
| Engine Oil Temperature (EOT)      | The thermistor type sensor provides an input signal to the ECM, which is proportional to the temperature of the oil being     |
| sensor                            | circulated around the engine oil passageways.   |
| Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S) 1     | The HO2S 1 is a linear characteristic type sensor, fitted forward of the exhaust system's catalytic converter. The sensor is  |
|                                   | used by the ECM as a primary sensor to measure oxygen content within the exhaust system. The sensor is used in                |
|                                   | conjunction with the ECM to provide closed loop fuelling control.   |
| HO2S 2                            | The HO2S 2 is a non-linear characteristic type sensor fitted to the exhaust system's catalytic converter, and is used by the  |
|                                   | ECM as a secondary sensor to measure oxygen content within the exhaust system. Used in conjunction with the ECM and           |
|                                   | the HO2S 1, the HO2S 2 aids closed loop fuelling control. It is also used to monitor catalyst efficiency.                     |
| EGR valve                         | A defined portion of the engine's exhaust emissions is extracted and returned to the intake mixture via a solenoid valve, as  |
|                                   | controlled by the ECM.  |
| Air intake control flap solenoid  | The ECM directly controls the solenoid, to open and close the air intake control flap in the air cleaner assembly. The        |
| (S/C engine)                      | control flap is opened at high engine speed and loads to satisfy engine air charge requirements.                              |
| Engine oil pressure switch        | This switch is connected to the Instrument Pack (IPK) and is used for a low oil pressure warning. It is not used by the       |
|                                   | engine management system.   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 13 of 152



## 5 Mode \$06 Data

| SAE J1979 Mode \$06 Data                                 |  |   |       |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|---|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Test ID  | Comp ID  | Description   | Units |  |  |  |  |
| \$02   | \$00   | Catalyst system efficiency below threshold 1 - bank (delay time)                            | msec  |  |  |  |  |
| \$04   | \$00   | Catalyst system efficiency below threshold 2 - bank (delay time)                            | msec  |  |  |  |  |
| Conversion for TIE                                       | Conversion for TID \$02 and \$04: Multiply by 4 to get result in milliseconds. |   |       |  |  |  |  |
| \$06   | \$00   | EVAP system leak detected (20 thou)   | kPa   |  |  |  |  |
| \$07   | \$00   | EVAP system leak detected (gross leak)  | kPa   |  |  |  |  |
| \$08   | \$00   | EVAP system leak detected (40 thou)   | kPa   |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | by 6.25/1024, then subtract 4.125 to get result in kPa.                                     |       |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | 1024 to get result in kPa.  |       |  |  |  |  |
| \$09   | \$00   | EGR system flow malfunction (GA changing rate low)  | g/sec |  |  |  |  |
| \$0A   | \$00   | EGR system flow malfunction (GA changing rate high)   | g/sec |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | by 400/65536, then subtract 200 to get result in g/sec. Result can be positive or negative. |       |  |  |  |  |
| \$0B   | \$00   | EVAP system flow check  | None  |  |  |  |  |
|  | \$0C \$00 EVAP system flow check None  |   |       |  |  |  |  |
| Conversion for TID \$0B and \$0C: Multiply by 0.5/65536. |  |   |       |  |  |  |  |
| \$0D   | \$00   | EVAP system flow check  | None  |  |  |  |  |
| \$0E   | \$00   | EVAP system flow check  | None  |  |  |  |  |
| Conversion for TIE                                       | \$0D and \$0E: Multiply  |   |       |  |  |  |  |
| \$0F   | \$00   | EVAP system flow check  | rpm   |  |  |  |  |
| \$10   | \$00   | EVAP system flow check  | rpm   |  |  |  |  |
| \$11   | \$00   | EVAP system flow check  | rpm   |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | ultiply by 100/256 to get result in RPM.  |       |  |  |  |  |
| \$12   | \$00   | EVAP system flow check  | g/sec |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | 24 to get result in g/sec.  |       |  |  |  |  |
| \$13   | \$00   | Catalyst system efficiency below threshold 1 - bank (high airflow)                          | None  |  |  |  |  |
| \$14   | \$00   | Catalyst system efficiency below threshold 2 - bank (high airflow)                          | None  |  |  |  |  |
|  | ) \$13 and \$14: Multiply  |   |       |  |  |  |  |
| \$1A   | \$00   | Upstream HO2S 11 lean to rich response time counter   | msec  |  |  |  |  |
| \$1B   | \$00   | Upstream HO2S 21 lean to rich response time counter   | msec  |  |  |  |  |
| Conversion for TIE                                       | ) \$1A and \$1B: Multiply  | y by 64 to get result in msec.  |       |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 14 of 152



| SAE J1979 Mode \$06 Data – Continued |                            |  |     |  |  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|-----|--|--|
| \$1C                                 | \$00                       | Upstream HO2S 11 minimum sensor current for test cycle   | mA  |  |  |
| \$1D                                 | \$00                       | Upstream HO2S 21 minimum sensor current for test cycle   | mA  |  |  |
| \$1E                                 | \$00                       | Upstream HO2S 11 maximum sensor current for test cycle   | mA  |  |  |
| \$1F                                 | \$00                       | Upstream HO2S 21 maximum sensor current for test cycle   | mA  |  |  |
| Conversion for TIE                   | ) \$1C, \$1D, \$1E and \$1 | F: Multiply by 1/256, then subtract 128 to get result in mA. Result can be positive or negative. |     |  |  |
| \$21                                 | \$00                       | EGR system flow malfunction (MAP changing rate low)  | kPa |  |  |
| \$22                                 | \$00                       | EGR system flow malfunction (MAP changing rate high)   | kPa |  |  |
| Conversion for TIE                   | \$21 and \$22: Multiply    | by 500/65536, then subtract 133.35 to get result in kPa. Result can be positive or negative.     |     |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 15 of 152



#### 6 On Board Monitoring

The vehicle drive train is continually monitored throughout its life to maintain its proper function and ensure that emission levels do not exceed accepted limits.

#### 6.1 Catalyst Efficiency Monitor

Catalytic converters oxidize unburned Hydrocarbons (HC) and Carbon Monoxide (CO) by combining them with oxygen to produce water vapor, and reduce nitrogen oxides to nitrogen and oxygen. When the engine air fuel ratio is lean, the oxygen content of the catalytic converter reaches its maximum value. When the air fuel ratio is rich, the oxygen content is depleted. If the air fuel ratio remains rich for an extended period, the converter may fail to convert the harmful gases.

The Catalyst monitor operates once per trip, and is not a continuous monitor.

The monitor waits until all entry conditions are met, including the modeled catalyst temperature reaching its threshold. Once all entry conditions are met, the monitor starts to run. The fuelling is cycled rich and lean (called dither) by approximately 3% to get a reaction at the downstream Oxygen Sensor (O2S). At the start of the monitor, delay counters operate so that the fuelling is stable when the diagnosis takes place. If the entry conditions then drop out, the monitor result and execution timer are held at the values that they were when the entry conditions dropped out. The next time entry conditions are met the monitor carries on from where it stopped previously. This will happen for a maximum of four attempts, after this, the monitor will reset and the diagnosis restarts.

The monitor runs for a calibratable period of time, after which the monitor results are made. The monitor results are decided by accumulating the locus of the downstream O2S signal versus the accumulation of the upstream O2S. The more active the downstream sensor, the less oxygen storage capacity the catalyst has, so the higher the locus value.

With a 100,000-mile catalyst, the downstream O2S is not so active, so lower locus values are obtained.

A judgment is made when the monitor has finished. The judgment made can either be "normal" or "fail". The normal judgment is made if the accumulated count is lower than a calibratable threshold at the judgment point. The failure judgment is made if the accumulated count equals or exceeds the calibratable threshold at the judgment point. If a failure judgment is made, then the relevant DTCs are stored within the engine management system.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 16 of 152



# **6.1.1 Monitoring Structure**

|  | Catalyst Monitoring Operation – Up to 2004 Model Year |  |   |                 |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|---|-----------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/<br>System   | Fault<br>Codes  | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description                                       | Malfunction<br>Criteria                 | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required                                     | MIL  |  |  |
| Catalyst<br>efficiency Bank<br>A<br>Catalyst<br>efficiency Bank<br>B | P0420   | Ratio of locus of upstream/<br>downstream HO2S during<br>mixture dither. | Accumulative locus of downstream sensor |                 | Engine speed Closed lop fuelling Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Mass Airflow Atmospheric pressure Airflow change Engine speed change Throttle angle change Idle Sub feedback compensation Air fuel ratio compensation Linear air fuel ratio compensation Fuel level Disable: | 1300 to 3000 RPM Active 75 to 120 °C -20 to 110 °C 14 to 65 g/s > 70.0 kPa < 30 g/s/s < 360 RPM/s < 10 deg/s Inactive 0.9 to 1.1 0.75 to 1.25 0.5 to 1.5 > 11% P0101, P0102, P0103, P0 P0108, P0111, P0112, P0 P0118, P0121, P0122, P0 | 30s 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>2 Drive<br>Cycles           |  |  |  |
|  |   |  |   |                 |   | P0222, P0223,<br>P0301, P0302, P0303, P0<br>P0307, P0308, P0443, P0<br>P0603, P1224, P1229, P1<br>P1316, P1367,<br>P1368, P1609, P1611, P1<br>P1642, P1215, P1216, P1<br>P1338, P3029  | 304, P0305<br>444, P0445<br>251, P1313<br>631, P1633 | 5, P0306,<br>5, P0460,<br>3, P1314,<br>3, P1637, |  |  |
|  |   |  |   |                 | Bank A  | P0031, P0032, P0037, P0<br>P0140, P0171, P0172, P0<br>P0207, P0351, P0353, P0  | 201, P0203   | 3, P0205,  |  |  |
|  |   |  |   |                 | Bank B  | P0051, P0052, P0057, P0<br>P0160, P0174, P0175, P0<br>P0208, P0352, P0354, P0  | 202, P0204   | l, P0206,  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 17 of 152



| Catalyst Monitoring Operation – From 2004 Model Year   |                |  |   |  |   |  |  |        |  |  |
|--|----------------|--|---|--|---|--|--|--------|--|--|
| Component/<br>System                                   | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description                                       | Malfunction<br>Criteria                 | Threshold value                                | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Require<br>d   | MIL    |  |  |
| Catalyst efficiency Bank A  Catalyst efficiency Bank B | P0420          | Ratio of locus of upstream/<br>downstream HO2S during<br>mixture dither. | Accumulative locus of downstream sensor | >= 16 (XK8)<br>>= 17 (XJ)<br>>= 18 (V6 S-Type) | Intake Air Temperature  Mass Airflow  Atmospheric pressure  Airflow change  Engine speed change Throttle angle change Idle Sub feedback control Short term fuel trim Total fuel trim Fuel level  Disable: | 1300 to 2900 (X-Type) 1300 to 3000 (V8) 1300 to 3250 (V6 S-Type) Active 75 to 119 °C -20 to 101 °C -8.13 to 110 °C (X-Type) 10 to 65 g/s 10 to 40 g/s (X-Type) >= 70.0 kPa >= 75.5 kPa (X-Type) <= 30 g/s/0.512s <=20 g/s/0.512s (X-Type) <= 360 RPM/0.512s <= 10 deg/1.024s Inactive 0.9 to 1.1 0.75 to 1.25 0.5 to 1.5 >= 11%  C1137, C1145, C1155, C1 P0101, P0102, P0103, P0 P0108, P0111, P0112, P0 P0117, P0118, P0121, P0 P0117, P0118, P0121, P0 P0195, P0128, P0181, P0 P0191, P0192, P0193, P0 P0441, P0443, P0444, P0 P0603, P1104, P1224, P1 P1234, P1236, P1251, P1 P1316, P1338, P1339, P1 P1609, P1611, P1631, P1 P1642 | 165, C1175<br>106, P0107,<br>113, P0116,<br>122, P0123,<br>182, P0223,<br>445, P0460,<br>229, P1233,<br>313, P1314,<br>367, P1368, | Cycles |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 18 of 152



|                      |                | Cataly                             | st Monitoring O         | peration – Fr   | om 2004 Model Year     |   |                            |        |
|----------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|---|----------------------------|--------|
| Component/<br>System | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter | Enable<br>Conditions  | Time<br>Require<br>d       | MIL    |
|                      |                |                                    |                         |                 | Bank A Bank B          | P0031, P0032, P0037, P0<br>P0137, P0138, P0140, P0<br>P0201, P0203, P0205, P0<br>P0353, P0355, P0357<br>P0051, P0052, P0057, P0 | 171, P0172,<br>207, P0351, | Cycles |
|                      |                |                                    |                         |                 | Disable Additions:     | P0157, P0158, P0160, P0<br>P0202, P0204, P0206, P0<br>P0354, P0356, P0358<br>P0069, P0607, P0627, P0                            | 174, P0175,<br>208, P0352, | Cycles |
|                      |                |                                    |                         |                 |                        | P2118, P2119, P2135, P2<br>P2632, P2633, P2634, P2  |                            | Cycles |

|   |                | Cataly   | yst Monitoring Op | eration – | 2008 Model Year   |   |          |                      |
|---|----------------|--|-------------------|-----------|---|---|----------|----------------------|
| Component/  | Fault          | Monitoring Strategy  | Malfunction       | Threshold | Secondary   | Enable  | Time     | MIL                  |
| System  | Codes          | Description  | Criteria          | value     | Parameter   | Conditions  | Required |                      |
| Catalyst Monitoring Catalyst efficiency bank A Catalyst efficiency bank B | P0420<br>P0430 | U/s HO2S signal locus compared to d/s HO2S signal locus during A/F dither. | Locus ratio       | >= 13     | Engine Speed Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Mass Airflow RPM change TP change MAF change Atmospheric pressure Sub F/B trim Total A/F trim (long + short term) short term A/F trim CL A/F control & sub F/B control Idle Fuel level | 1300 < N < 3000 rpm >= 78 degC -8 < T < 110 degC 10 < MAF < 45 g/s <= 360 /512ms <= 15.0deg/1024ms <= 30 g/s/512ms >= 75.5 kPa 0.9 < F < 1.1 0.5 < F < 1.5  0.75 < trim < 1.25  Active Inactive >= 11 % | 20 s     | 2<br>Drive<br>Cycles |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 19 of 152



|                      |                | Cataly                          | st Monitoring O         | peration – 2    | 2008 Model Year                   |  |  |   |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|---|
| Component/<br>System | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter            | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required   | MIL   |
|                      |                |                                 |                         |                 | Fault Codes that disable<br>P0430 | P0300 P0301 P0303 P0309 P0306 P1313 P1314 P131 P0137 P0140 P0172 P017 P0069 P0118 P0117 P011 P0353 P0355 P1367 P136 P0205 P0031 P0032 P044 P0112 P0113 P0111 P062 P0629 P0102 P0103 P110 P0038 P0037 P1637 P164 P1609 P0128 P0193 P019 C0037 C003A P0501 P217 P0123 P0222 P0223 P213 P0607 P1633 P0305 P P1313 P1314 P1316 P0153 P P0175 P0174 P2229 P2228 P P0116 P0125 P0354 P P0202 P0204 P0206 P0051 P0443 P0112 P0113 P0111 P0629 P0102 P0103 P1104 P P0443 P0112 P0113 P0111 P0629 P0102 P0103 P1104 P P0443 P0112 P0113 P0111 P0629 P0102 P0103 P1104 P P0443 P0112 P0113 P0111 P0629 P0102 P0103 P1104 P P0113 P0111 P0629 P0102 P0103 P1104 P P0113 P0112 P0113 P0111 | 6 P0133 P01 1 P2229 P22 6 P0125 P03 8 P0201 P02 4 P0445 P04 7 P2635 P06 4 P0101 P00 2 P0603 P04 2 P0191 P01 9 P2118 P0 5 P1251 P16 0302 P0304 P 0158 P0157 P 0052 P0444 P 0627 P2635 P 0101 P0060 P 0460 P1609 P | 228<br>351<br>203<br>443<br>528<br>054<br>460<br>181<br>122<br>531<br>20306<br>20160<br>20117<br>21368<br>20445<br>20628<br>20058<br>20128<br>20501 |

## **6.1.2 Drive Cycle Information**

Drive cycle under review.

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 20 of 152



#### 6.2 Misfire Monitor

A misfire is caused by a failure of combustion. When this occurs, unburned HC and excess oxygen are exhausted from the cylinder. Consequently, the catalytic converter may suffer damage through overheating as it tries to convert the excessive HC. Secondly, the O2S will report a lean condition to the ECM, which in turn will increase the injector pulse width and add more raw fuel to the exhaust stream.

The misfire detection monitor is continuous and is designed to detect levels of misfire that can cause thermal damage to the catalyst and/or result in excessive tailpipe emissions. Determination of a misfire is made by analysis of changes in crankshaft speed, a misfire causing a drop in acceleration after an anticipated firing event. This data is analyzed in four ways to ensure all possible combinations of misfire can be detected.

The results of the misfire judgment process on each firing event are used to determine whether two failure levels have been met, 'catalyst damage' misfire and 'excess emissions' misfire. Each fault judgment process has its own failure threshold and calculation period.

#### Monitor DTCs

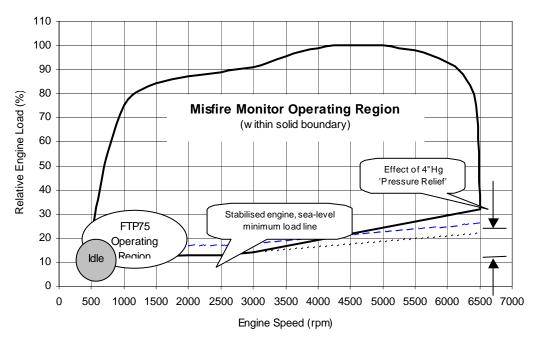
| P0300<br>P0301<br>P0302 | Random/multiple cylinder misfire<br>Cylinder 1 (1 Bank A) misfire<br>Cylinder 2 (1 Bank B) misfire |
|-------------------------|--|
| P0303                   | Cylinder 3 (2 Bank A) misfire  |
| P0304                   | Cylinder 4 (2 Bank B) misfire  |
| P0305                   | Cylinder 5 (3 Bank A) misfire  |
| P0306                   | Cylinder 6 (3 Bank B) misfire  |
| P0307                   | Cylinder 7 (4 Bank A) misfire (V8 engines only)  |
| P0308                   | Cylinder 8 (4 Bank B) misfire (V8 engines only)  |
| P1313                   | Catalyst damage misfire, Bank A  |
| P1314                   | Catalyst damage misfire, Bank B  |
| P1316                   | Excess emissions misfire   |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 21 of 152



#### **Monitoring Strategy**

The misfire monitor operates continuously within the boundaries of the regulated monitor operation window, as shown below:



Region of misfire monitor operation

After engine start, the monitor will enable as soon as the engine speed rises above the minimum operation speed (150 RPM below fully warm stabilized idle speed). Two revolutions of crank angle data, i.e. One sample of data from each cylinder firing, are 'buffered' before any decisions can be made by the monitor. Before engine speed has reached the top of the start flare the monitor will be ready to make misfire judgments, which are then made on every cylinder firing, irrespective of whether the monitor is enabled or not.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 22 of 152



# **6.2.1 Monitoring Structure**

|  |                | М                       | isfire Monitor Op                                       | eration – Up   | to 2004 Model Year   |  |   |  |
|--|----------------|-------------------------|---|----------------|--|--|---|--|
| Component/   | Fault          | Monitoring Strategy     | Malfunction   | Threshold      | Secondary  | Enable   | Time  | MIL  |
| System   | Codes          | Description             | Criteria  | value          | Parameter  | Conditions   | Required  |  |
| Random misfire  Misfire cylinder 1  Misfire cylinder 2 | P0300<br>P0301 | Crank speed fluctuation | Catalyst damage<br>Excessive emissions                  |                | Steady state Engine speed (RPM) 4.2L N/A Auto 4.2L S/C Auto 3.0L Manual  | 450 - 6500<br>450 - 6200<br>580 - 7000                   | 200 or 1000<br>revolutions                            | 1+2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>1+2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Misfire cylinder 3                                     | P0302<br>P0303 |                         |   |                | 3.0L Auto Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature  | 530 - 7000<br>-8 to 120°C<br>-8 to 100°C                 |   | 1+2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>1+2 Drive           |
|  |                |                         |   |                | Atmospheric pressure   | > 68 kPa   |   | Cycles                                     |
| Misfire cylinder 4                                     | P0304          |                         |   |                | Fuel level<br>Load   | > 11%<br>> Value in map                                  |   | 1+2 Drive<br>Cycles                        |
| Misfire cylinder 5<br>Misfire cylinder 6               | P0305<br>P0306 |                         |   |                |  | MIS2   |   | 1+2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>1+2 Drive           |
| Misfire cylinder 7 (V8)                                | P0307          |                         |   |                |  |  |   | Cycles<br>1+2 Drive<br>Cycles              |
| Misfire cylinder 8<br>(V8)                             | P0308          |                         |   |                |  |  |   | 1+2 Drive<br>Cycles                        |
| Misfire catalyst<br>damage 1                           | P1313          |                         | Catalyst damage %                                       | See table MIS1 |  |  |   | No   |
| Misfire catalyst<br>damage 2                           | P1314          |                         | Catalyst damage %                                       |                |  |  |   | No   |
| Misfire excess<br>emissions                            | P1316          |                         | Emissions failure<br>Normally aspirated<br>Supercharged |                |  |  |   | No   |
|  |                |                         |   | Disable:       | P0101-P0103, P1104, P0111- P011<br>P0336, P0460, P0603, P0121- P01<br>P0160, P0171, P0172, P0174, P01<br>P0831, P0832, P1234, P1236, P13<br>P1251, P1516, P1609, P1611, P16<br>C1137, C1165, C1175 | 23, P0137, P0138<br>75, P0181- P0183<br>38, P0222, P0223 | , P0140, P0157,<br>, P1233, P1339,<br>, P1224, P1229, | P0158,<br>P0106,<br>P1230,                 |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 23 of 152



|   |   |                                       | Misfire Monitor O   | peration –                                  | From 2004 Model Year  |   |                              |   |
|---|---|---------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|------------------------------|---|
| Component/<br>System  | Fault<br>Codes  | Monitoring<br>Strategy<br>Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria   | Threshold value                             | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions  | Time<br>Require<br>d         | MIL   |
| Random misfire Misfire cylinder 1 Misfire cylinder 2 Misfire cylinder 3 Misfire cylinder 4 Misfire cylinder 5 Misfire cylinder 5 Misfire cylinder 6 Misfire cylinder 7 (V8) Misfire cylinder 8 (V8) | P0300<br>P0301<br>P0302<br>P0303<br>P0304<br>P0305<br>P0306<br>P0307<br>P0308 | Crank speed fluctuation               | Catalyst damage<br>Excessive emissions  |   | Steady state Engine speed (RPM) 4.2L NA Auto (XK8) 4.2L S/C Auto (XK8) 4.2L NA Auto (XJ) 4.2L S/C Auto (XK8) 3.0L Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Atmospheric pressure  Fuel level Load | 450 to 6500<br>450 to 6200<br>450 to 6600<br>450 to 6400<br>530 - 7000<br>-8 to 119°C<br>-40 to 119°C<br>> 68 kPa<br>> 75.5 kPa (X-Type)<br>> 11%<br>> Value in map | 200 or 1000<br>revolutions   | 1+2 Drive Cycles |
| Misfire catalyst damage 1   | P1313   |                                       | Catalyst damage %   | See table<br>MIS1                           |   |   | 200<br>revolutions           | No  |
| Misfire catalyst damage 2   | P1314   |                                       | Catalyst damage %   |   |   |   |                              | No  |
| Misfire excess<br>emissions   | P1316   |                                       | Emissions failure 4.2L normally aspirated 4.2L supercharged 3.0L S-Type X-Type manual X-Type automatic Disable: |   | 5, C1155, C1165, C1175, P010  |   |                              |   |
|   |   | X-Type 2005<br>model year             | Disable additional:   | P0174, P0179<br>P0831, P0833<br>P1609, P161 | 3, P0125, P0128, P0137, P0138,<br>5, P0181-P0183, P0191-P0193,<br>2. P1104, P1224, P1229, P1233<br>1, P1631, P1633, P1637, P1642<br>7, P0627-P0629, P0851, P2118,   | P0222, P0223, P033, P1234, P1236, P125  | 5, P0336, P0<br>51, P1338, P | 460, P0603,<br>1339, P1516,   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 24 of 152



|   |   |                                      | Misfire Monitor Oper  | ation – 20        | 08 Model Year  |  |   |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|---|-------------------|--|--|---|
| Component/  | Fault                                     | Monitoring Strategy                  | Malfunction   | Threshold         | Secondary  | Enable   | Time MIL  |
| System  | Codes                                     | Description                          | Criteria  | value             | Parameter  | Conditions   | Required  |
| System Misfire Monitoring  Random Misfire  Misfire cylinder 1  Misfire cylinder 2  Misfire cylinder 3  Misfire cylinder 4  Misfire cylinder 5  Misfire cylinder 6 | P0300 P0301 P0302 P0303 P0304 P0305 P0306 | Description  Crank speed fluctuation | Criteria  Misfire at catalyst damage level (200 rev block) or  Misfire at excess emissions level (1000 rev block)     | See table<br>MIS1 | Engine speed Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Atmospheric pressure Fuel level Engine load Fuel cut off Fuel cut off Ignition Retard Rough road Engine speed delta Engine load delta | Conditions  530 < N < 7000 rpm -8 < T < 119 degC -40 < T < 119 degC > 76 kPa >= 11 % Positive  Not active for at least 0.26 s Not detected for at least 0.5 s < 5078 rpm/s < 0.20 g/rev/64 ms for at | Required  Depends on engine speed, misfire pattern and time after engine start          |
| Misfire during first<br>1000 revs<br>Catalyst damaging<br>misfire<br>Bank 1<br>Bank 2   | P1316 P1313 P1314                         |                                      | Misfire during the first 1000 engine revolutions after start  Misfire at catalyst damage or excessive emissions level |                   | Throttle angle delta  Fault Codes that disable Misfire Detection   | least 20 firing cycles   | 335 P0336<br>117 P0116<br>627 P2635<br>104 P0101<br>460 P1609<br>181 C0037<br>122 P0123 |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 25 of 152



#### 6.2.1 Misfire Detection

For the purposes of misfire detection, "steady - state" is defined as:

- At least 1 second since fuel cut-off was last invoked.
- At least 1 second since gear change was last made.
- At least 0.5 seconds since rough road detected (1second for 3.0L).
- At least 1 second since acceleration ignition retard was last invoked.
- At least 1 second since >15% shunt control ignition retard was last invoked (3.0L only).
- At least 1 second since fuel cut-off ignition retard was last invoked.
- At least 1 second since ISC feedback status (off to on only) changed.
- At least 1 second since A/C status (on or off) changed.
- At least 1 second since electrical load status (on or off) changed.
- At least 1 second since traction control ignition retard was last invoked.
- Rate of change of engine speed less than 250 RPM/0.064s.
- Rate of change of engine load has been less than 0.1g/revolution for at least 20 firing cycles.
- Rate of change of throttle angle is less than 1.5 degrees/0.008s.

|            |     |                    |      |      |      |      | MIS1 | – 2.5L |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------------|-----|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Engine     |     | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |      |      |        |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
| load (g/s) | 700 | 730                | 1000 | 1500 | 2000 | 2500 | 3000 | 3500   | 4000 | 4500 | 5000 | 5500 | 6000 | 6500 | 7000 |
| 0.30       | 148 | 148                | 138  | 116  | 100  | 100  | 100  | 90     | 82   | 74   | 42   | 32   | 32   | 20   | 18   |
| 0.60       | 124 | 124                | 108  | 108  | 90   | 82   | 70   | 64     | 58   | 50   | 42   | 32   | 32   | 20   | 18   |
| 0.80       | 106 | 106                | 106  | 100  | 82   | 74   | 60   | 56     | 50   | 42   | 36   | 30   | 24   | 20   | 18   |
| 1.00       | 100 | 100                | 100  | 82   | 74   | 66   | 50   | 50     | 42   | 32   | 30   | 28   | 32   | 20   | 20   |
| 1.20       | 88  | 88                 | 88   | 74   | 62   | 44   | 42   | 40     | 32   | 32   | 28   | 28   | 32   | 30   | 30   |
| 1.40       | 88  | 88                 | 88   | 74   | 62   | 60   | 56   | 56     | 48   | 36   | 36   | 32   | 32   | 36   | 36   |
| 1.60       | 88  | 88                 | 88   | 74   | 62   | 60   | 56   | 56     | 48   | 36   | 36   | 32   | 32   | 36   | 36   |
| 2.00       | 88  | 88                 | 88   | 74   | 62   | 60   | 56   | 56     | 48   | 36   | 36   | 32   | 32   | 36   | 36   |

Note: The figures in the map denote the number of misfires in 200 engine revolutions corresponding to catalyst damage misfire failure.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 26 of 152



|            | MIS1 – 3.0L (S-Type) |  |   |     |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|------------|----------------------|--|---|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Engine     |                      | Engine speed (RPM)   |   |     |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| load (g/s) | 680                  | 680         730         1000         1500         2000         2500         3000         3500         4000         4500         5000         5500         6000         6500         7000 |   |     |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 0.25       | 150                  | 150  |   |     |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 0.3        | 138                  | 138  | 138         125         120         119         110         100         93         93         74         70         66         66         62         58 |     |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 0.4        | 126                  | 126  |   |     |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 0.6        | 121                  | 121  | 118   | 118 | 102 | 93 | 80 | 69 | 67 | 56 | 55 | 46 | 46 | 43 | 42 |
| 0.9        | 117                  | 117  | 111   | 100 | 84  | 72 | 60 | 53 | 52 | 48 | 39 | 31 | 31 | 27 | 26 |
| 1.2        | 93                   | 93   | 93  | 76  | 67  | 58 | 56 | 50 | 51 | 38 | 32 | 23 | 23 | 23 | 23 |
| 1.3        | 84                   | 84   | 84  | 77  | 64  | 61 | 50 | 41 | 44 | 27 | 27 | 26 | 26 | 25 | 25 |
| 1.6        | 100                  | 100  | 100   | 77  | 73  | 68 | 50 | 46 | 57 | 50 | 41 | 36 | 38 | 39 | 38 |

Note: The figures in the map denote the number of misfires in 200 engine revolutions corresponding to catalyst damage misfire failure.

|            |     |  |     |     |     | MI | S1 - 3.0 | L (X-Typ | oe) |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|------------|-----|--|-----|-----|-----|----|----------|----------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Engine     |     | Engine speed (RPM)   |     |     |     |    |          |          |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| load (g/s) | 700 | 700   730   1000   1500   2000   2500   3000   3500   4000   4500   5000   5500   6000   6500   7000 |     |     |     |    |          |          |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 0.30       | 148 | 148  | 134 | 116 | 106 | 90 | 70       | 68       | 64  | 56 | 40 | 20 | 26 | 26 | 24 |
| 0.60       | 126 | 126  | 120 | 106 | 90  | 76 | 64       | 58       | 50  | 38 | 32 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 24 |
| 0.80       | 100 | 100  | 100 | 90  | 76  | 64 | 56       | 50       | 40  | 26 | 20 | 18 | 18 | 18 | 24 |
| 1.00       | 84  | 84   | 84  | 80  | 62  | 56 | 42       | 38       | 40  | 26 | 20 | 14 | 14 | 18 | 20 |
| 1.20       | 68  | 68   | 68  | 64  | 50  | 46 | 40       | 34       | 26  | 26 | 30 | 26 | 26 | 26 | 26 |
| 1.40       | 78  | 78   | 78  | 64  | 56  | 46 | 26       | 20       | 26  | 30 | 30 | 30 | 28 | 26 | 34 |
| 1.60       | 78  | 78   | 78  | 64  | 56  | 46 | 50       | 50       | 34  | 30 | 34 | 32 | 34 | 32 | 34 |
| 2.00       | 78  | 78   | 78  | 64  | 56  | 46 | 50       | 50       | 34  | 30 | 34 | 32 | 34 | 32 | 34 |

Note: The figures in the map denote the number of misfires in 200 engine revolutions corresponding to catalyst damage misfire failure.

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 27 of 152



|            |     | MIS1 – 4.2L Normally Aspirated |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------------|-----|--------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Engine     |     | Engine speed (RPM)             |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
| load (g/s) | 600 | 650                            | 1000 | 1500 | 2000 | 2500 | 3000 | 3500 | 4000 | 4500 | 5000 | 5500 | 6000 | 6500 |
| 0.3        | 187 | 187                            | 179  | 167  | 140  | 122  | 118  | 104  | 94   | 89   | 74   | 60   | 51   | 62   |
| 0.4        | 183 | 183                            | 175  | 163  | 137  | 119  | 114  | 100  | 94   | 86   | 70   | 56   | 47   | 58   |
| 0.6        | 173 | 173                            | 165  | 153  | 134  | 109  | 109  | 109  | 92   | 83   | 68   | 53   | 44   | 56   |
| 8.0        | 164 | 164                            | 156  | 146  | 133  | 120  | 106  | 94   | 83   | 66   | 53   | 41   | 30   | 40   |
| 1.2        | 151 | 151                            | 143  | 114  | 96   | 75   | 75   | 63   | 50   | 33   | 20   | 20   | 20   | 20   |
| 1.6        | 122 | 122                            | 114  | 94   | 75   | 58   | 50   | 29   | 26   | 20   | 20   | 20   | 20   | 20   |
| 2.2        | 120 | 120                            | 112  | 92   | 74   | 58   | 45   | 33   | 26   | 27   | 26   | 31   | 31   | 34   |
| 2.8        | 120 | 120                            | 112  | 92   | 74   | 60   | 48   | 36   | 31   | 30   | 26   | 31   | 31   | 34   |

Note: The figures in the map denote the number of misfires in 200 engine revolutions corresponding to catalyst damage misfire failure.

|            |     |     |      |      |      | MIS1 - 4 | .2L Supe | rcharge   | d    |      |      |      |      |      |
|------------|-----|-----|------|------|------|----------|----------|-----------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Engine     |     |     |      |      |      |          | Engine s | peed (RPM | )    |      |      |      |      |      |
| load (g/s) | 600 | 650 | 1000 | 1500 | 2000 | 2500     | 3000     | 3500      | 4000 | 4500 | 5000 | 5500 | 6000 | 6200 |
| 0.4        | 186 | 186 | 180  | 164  | 150  | 134      | 117      | 101       | 89   | 77   | 64   | 68   | 72   | 74   |
| 0.6        | 186 | 186 | 178  | 160  | 150  | 130      | 110      | 97        | 85   | 73   | 60   | 64   | 68   | 70   |
| 1          | 183 | 183 | 175  | 159  | 142  | 125      | 108      | 93        | 77   | 63   | 49   | 51   | 52   | 53   |
| 1.6        | 158 | 158 | 150  | 134  | 117  | 104      | 90       | 72        | 54   | 50   | 46   | 52   | 57   | 60   |
| 2.2        | 125 | 125 | 117  | 109  | 100  | 93       | 85       | 66        | 47   | 49   | 52   | 58   | 64   | 68   |
| 2.8        | 122 | 122 | 114  | 88   | 62   | 52       | 42       | 50        | 57   | 56   | 56   | 68   | 80   | 84   |
| 3.4        | 116 | 116 | 108  | 84   | 60   | 55       | 50       | 54        | 58   | 57   | 57   | 69   | 74   | 77   |
| 3.8        | 116 | 116 | 108  | 84   | 60   | 55       | 50       | 53        | 61   | 65   | 70   | 71   | 73   | 77   |

Note: The figures in the map denote the number of misfires in 200 engine revolutions corresponding to catalyst damage misfire failure.

|          | MIS2 – 2.5L Automatic                                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM) 700 730 1000 1500 2000 2500 3000 7000 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|          |  |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| -10      | 0.64   | 0.64 | 0.64 | 0.43 | 0.43 | 0.43 | 0.43 | 0.72 |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 0.39   | 0.39 | 0.39 | 0.33 | 0.33 | 0.33 | 0.34 | 0.63 |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 0.27   | 0.27 | 0.27 | 0.25 | 0.26 | 0.26 | 0.27 | 0.56 |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 0.22   | 0.22 | 0.22 | 0.20 | 0.22 | 0.22 | 0.23 | 0.52 |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 28 of 152



|          | MIS2 – 2.5L Automatic (2005 Model Year X-Type) |                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |
|----------|--|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|
| EOT (°C) |  | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |
|          | 500  | 650                | 1000 | 1150 | 1380 | 1800 | 2300 | 2550 | 2760 | 3000 | 7000 |  |  |
| -8       | 0.45   | 0.45               | 0.45 | 0.45 | 0.45 | 0.46 | 0.47 | 0.47 | 0.47 | 0.47 | 0.72 |  |  |
| 15       | 0.32   | 0.32               | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.33 | 0.37 | 0.38 | 0.38 | 0.38 | 0.38 | 0.63 |  |  |
| 45       | 0.26   | 0.26               | 0.26 | 0.26 | 0.28 | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.57 |  |  |
| 80       | 0.21   | 0.21               | 0.23 | 0.24 | 0.25 | 0.26 | 0.27 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.53 |  |  |

|          | MIS2 – 2.5L Manual                                       |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM) 700 730 1000 1500 2000 2500 3000 7000 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|          |  |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| -10      | 0.47   | 0.47 | 0.47 | 0.33 | 0.33 | 0.34 | 0.35 | 0.64 |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 0.32   | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.26 | 0.26 | 0.27 | 0.28 | 0.57 |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 0.23   | 0.23 | 0.23 | 0.21 | 0.22 | 0.23 | 0.24 | 0.53 |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 0.19   | 0.19 | 0.19 | 0.18 | 0.19 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 0.49 |  |  |  |  |

|          | MIS2 – 2.5L Manual (2005 Model Year X-Type) |  |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |
|----------|---|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM)                          |  |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |
|          | 500   | 500 650 785 960 1165 1410 1725 2180 2700 3000 7000 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |
| -8       | 0.50  | 0.50   | 0.50 | 0.43 | 0.37 | 0.33 | 0.33 | 0.33 | 0.37 | 0.37 | 0.66 |  |  |
| 15       | 0.36  | 0.36   | 0.36 | 0.31 | 0.27 | 0.25 | 0.27 | 0.28 | 0.30 | 0.30 | 0.59 |  |  |
| 45       | 0.26  | 0.26   | 0.26 | 0.24 | 0.21 | 0.22 | 0.24 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 0.26 | 0.55 |  |  |
| 80       | 0.20  | 0.20   | 0.20 | 0.20 | 0.18 | 0.18 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 0.20 | 0.21 | 0.50 |  |  |

|          | MIS2 – 3.0L S-Type Automatic   |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
|----------|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM)   |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
|          | 680         730         1000         1500         2000         2500         3000         700 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
| -8.1     | 0.599  | 0.599 | 0.599 | 0.523 | 0.504 | 0.504 | 0.504 | 0.832 |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 0.404  | 0.404 | 0.404 | 0.409 | 0.399 | 0.4   | 0.38  | 0.709 |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 0.34   | 0.33  | 0.32  | 0.32  | 0.32  | 0.32  | 0.35  | 0.678 |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 0.295  | 0.29  | 0.27  | 0.27  | 0.255 | 0.26  | 0.26  | 0.589 |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 29 of 152



|          | MIS2 – 3.0L S-Type Manual |   |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------|---------------------------|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM)        |   |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | 680                       | 680         730         1000         1500         2000         2500         3000         7000 |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
| -8.1     | 0.399                     | 0.399   | 0.399 | 0.399 | 0.409 | 0.432 | 0.432 | 0.841 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 0.32                      | 0.32  | 0.33  | 0.335 | 0.335 | 0.34  | 0.361 | 0.77  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 0.3                       | 0.3   | 0.314 | 0.29  | 0.29  | 0.3   | 0.3   | 0.709 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 0.275                     | 0.275   | 0.27  | 0.25  | 0.245 | 0.25  | 0.25  | 0.659 |  |  |  |  |  |

|          | MIS2 – 3.0L X-Type Automatic   |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM)           700         730         1000         1500         2000         2500         3000         7000 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|          |  |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| -10      | 0.55   | 0.55 | 0.55 | 0.44 | 0.44 | 0.44 | 0.44 | 0.79 |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 0.41   | 0.41 | 0.41 | 0.35 | 0.36 | 0.36 | 0.36 | 0.71 |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 0.32   | 0.32 | 0.32 | 0.28 | 0.29 | 0.29 | 0.30 | 0.65 |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 0.24   | 0.24 | 0.24 | 0.22 | 0.22 | 0.23 | 0.24 | 0.59 |  |  |  |  |

|          | MIS2 – 3.0L X-Type Manual                                |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM) 700 730 1000 1500 2000 2500 3000 7000 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|          |  |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| -10      | 0.54   | 0.54 | 0.54 | 0.37 | 0.37 | 0.38 | 0.38 | 0.72 |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 0.36   | 0.36 | 0.36 | 0.30 | 0.30 | 0.30 | 0.30 | 0.64 |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 0.25   | 0.25 | 0.25 | 0.24 | 0.24 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 0.59 |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 0.23   |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |

|          | MIS2 – 4.2L Normally Aspirated        |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------|---------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM)                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|          | 600 650 1000 1500 2000 2500 3000 6500 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| -8       | 0.45                                  | 0.45 | 0.45 | 0.45 | 0.46 | 0.46 | 0.46 | 0.88 |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 0.38                                  | 0.38 | 0.38 | 0.39 | 0.4  | 0.4  | 0.42 | 0.83 |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 0.31                                  | 0.31 | 0.31 | 0.32 | 0.33 | 0.33 | 0.34 | 0.75 |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 0.24                                  | 0.24 | 0.24 | 0.25 | 0.26 | 0.25 | 0.26 | 0.67 |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 30 of 152



|          | MIS2 – 4.2L Supercharged |                                       |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| EOT (°C) | Engine speed (RPM)       |                                       |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|          | 600                      | 600 650 1000 1500 2000 2500 3000 6500 |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| -8       | 0.6                      | 0.6                                   | 0.6  | 0.6  | 0.62 | 0.64 | 0.66 | 1.21 |  |  |  |  |
| 20       | 0.5                      | 0.5                                   | 0.5  | 0.51 | 0.51 | 0.52 | 0.54 | 1.09 |  |  |  |  |
| 50       | 0.37                     | 0.37                                  | 0.37 | 0.38 | 0.4  | 0.41 | 0.44 | 0.99 |  |  |  |  |
| 80       | 0.28                     | 0.28                                  | 0.28 | 0.28 | 0.29 | 0.31 | 0.35 | 0.9  |  |  |  |  |

# **6.2.2 Drive Cycle Information**

Drive cycle under review.

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 31 of 152



### 6.3 Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor

An O2S comprises of a gas-tight zirconium dioxide ceramic tube covered with thin layer of platinum. One end of the tube is open to atmosphere; the other end is sealed and protrudes into the exhaust. When the tube is filled with oxygen rich atmospheric air, and the outer walls are exposed to the oxygen depleted exhaust gases, a chemical reaction takes place and produces a voltage. The voltage output reflects the differences in oxygen concentrations on either side of the ceramic sensor element. As the oxygen content decreases, the voltage increases. As the oxygen content increases, the voltage decreases.

The oxygen content of the exhaust gas stream is directly related to the air fuel mixture supplied to the engine. The voltage output by the O2S is typically 800 to 1000mV for rich mixtures, and around 100mV for lean mixtures.

The ceramic material in the sensor becomes sensitive to the presence of oxygen in the exhaust gas stream at around 315°C. An internal heater is used to bring the sensor quickly up to the operating temperature.

The engine management system runs two tests on the upstream and downstream HO2S, one on the sensor operation and one on the sensor's internal heater.

Note: Only the rear oxygen sensors are used for fuel control.

#### 6.3.1 Downstream Oxygen Sensors High/Low Input Monitor

The downstream O2S are checked for their maximum and minimum output values. The monitor increments an execution timer if the monitor entry conditions are satisfied. A low voltage failure is judged if the output of the sensor does not exceed a calibrated value prior to the monitor execution timer exceeding its calibrated failure threshold. A high voltage failure is judged if the sensor output remains above a calibrated value after the monitor execution timer has exceeded its calibrated failure threshold or after a defined period of over run fuel cut off has been conducted. Additionally, a high voltage failure is invoked if the sensor voltage exceeds battery short threshold for the required time.

Note: Unless specifically included in the tables below, Intake Air Temperature, Engine Coolant Temperature, vehicle speed and time after start up are not critical to enable these monitors.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 32 of 152



# **6.3.2 Monitoring Structure**

|   | Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor Operation – Up to 2004 Model Year |                           |                |  |  |  |          |                   |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|---------------------------|----------------|--|--|--|----------|-------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/                                | Fault  | Monitoring Strategy       | Malfunction    | Threshold  | Secondary  | Enable   | Time     | MIL               |  |  |  |  |  |
| System                                    | Codes  | Description               | Criteria       | value  | Parameter  | Conditions   | Required |                   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Downstream<br>HO2S Bank A<br>high voltage | P0138  | Sensor voltage stuck high | Sensor voltage | 0.9 volts During fuel cut off, duration > 3.8s 2 volts anytime | Air fuel rate feedback compensation: Closed loop compensation: Closed loop compensation Average: Engine Coolant Temperature: Intake Air Temperature: Time after start up | 0.75 – 1.25<br>0.5 – 1.5<br>0.85 – 1.15<br>70 – 110 °C<br>-8 – 100 °C<br>2 seconds | 60s      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |  |
| Downstream<br>HO2S Bank B<br>high voltage | P0158  |                           |                |  | Disable:   | See HO2S downstream no activity check.   |          | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |  |

|                             | Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor Operation – From 2004 Model Year (XK8, S-Type and New XJ) |                                    |                         |  |                        |                                |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|------------------------|--------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/<br>System        | Fault<br>Codes   | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value                          | Secondary<br>Parameter | Enable<br>Conditions           | Time<br>Required   | MIL                                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| HO2S Bank A<br>high voltage | P0138<br>P0158   | Sensor voltage stuck high          | 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3         | >= 0.95 volts<br>or<br>>=2 volts anytime |                        | >= 5s (S-Type)<br>>= 3.5s (XJ) | 3.8s (XK8)<br>5s (S-Type)<br>3.5s (XJ)<br>Immediate<br>0.5s (XJ) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |  |
| g renage                    |  |                                    |                         |  | Disable:               | See HO2S downstr               | eam no activi  | y check.                               |  |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 33 of 152



| Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor Operation – From 2004 Model Year (X -Type) |                |                                 |                         |                 |  |  |                  |                   |  |  |
|---|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|--|--|------------------|-------------------|--|--|
| Component/<br>System  | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions                                     | Time<br>Required | MIL               |  |  |
| Downstream<br>HO2S Bank A<br>low input                                  | P0137          | Sensor voltage stuck low        | Sensor voltage          | < 0.30 volts    | Heater control HO2S heater power Engine speed Mass Airflow                           | Active<br>>=180 Watt sec<br>>= 1500 RPM<br>>= 15 g/s     | 151s             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
| Downstream<br>HO2S Bank B<br>low input                                  | P0157          |                                 |                         |                 | Atmospheric pressure Target Lambda Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature | >= 74.5 kPa<br>0.75 to 1<br>70 to 119 °C<br>-10 to 119°C |                  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
| Downstream<br>HO2S Bank A<br>high input                                 | P0138          | Sensor voltage stuck high       | Sensor voltage<br>or    | > 0.80 volts    | Time after start Closed loop fuelling Over run fuel cut off time                     | >= 30s<br>Active<br>>= 30s (high I/P)                    | 151s             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
|   | P0158          |                                 | Sensor voltage          | > 1.24 volts    | Anytime  |  | 0.5s             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
|   |                |                                 |                         |                 | Disable:   | See HO2S downstream no activity check.                   |                  |                   |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 34 of 152



|  |       | Heated Ox                 | kygen Sensor Monit     | tor Operat | ion – 2008 Model Year   |   |          |                   |
|--|-------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------|---|---|----------|-------------------|
| Component/   | Fault | Monitoring Strategy       | Malfunction            | Threshold  | Secondary   | Enable  | Time     | MIL               |
| System   | Codes | Description               | Criteria               | value      | Parameter   | Conditions  | Required |                   |
| Downstream HO2S Bank A low input Downstream HO2S Bank B low input                  | P0137 | Sensor voltage stuck low  | Maximum sensor voltage | < 0.04 V   | Target lambda Closed Loop Fuelling Battery voltage Accumulated Mass Air Flow (This accumulates if: Atmospheric pressure Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Afterstart counter  Accumulated Heater Duty (This accumulates if: MAF accumulation conditions | 0.75 <= Lambda <= 1.25  | 5 s      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|  |       |                           |                        |            | Heater control Accumulated HO2S heater energy Engine Speed Target lambda  | >= 180 Watt Seconds<br>>= 500 rpm   |          |                   |
| Downstream<br>HO2S Bank A<br>high input<br>Downstream<br>HO2S Bank B<br>high input | P0138 | Sensor voltage stuck high | Minimum sensor voltage | > 0.15 V   | Closed Loop Fuelling Accumulated Mass Air Flow Accumulated Heater Duty An over run fuel cut off has occurred, duration  | Active >= 185  >= 1400 >= 3.0 sec (U/s HO2S signal must be >= 0.75 during the fuel cut) |          | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|  |       | <u>or</u>                 | sensor voltage         | > 1.24 V   |   |   | 0.512 s  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|  |       |                           |                        |            | Fault Codes that disable<br>Bank A<br>Bank B  | See P0140 Monitor<br>See P0160 Monitor  |          |                   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 35 of 152



## 6.3.3 Downstream Oxygen Sensors Heater Circuit High

Heater resistance checks are performed when the heater is commanded on. If resistance values are outside of the limits when the heater is enabled, then a failure judgment is made.

## 6.3.4 Monitoring Structure

| Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor Operation                       |                |  |                         |           |           |              |   |                   |  |  |
|--|----------------|--|-------------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|---|-------------------|--|--|
| Component/   | Fault          | Monitoring Strategy                      | Malfunction             | Threshold | Secondary | Enable       | Time  | MIL               |  |  |
| System   | Codes<br>P0038 | Description Heater resistance check when | Criteria Outside limits | value     | Parameter | Conditions   | Required  | 2 Drive           |  |  |
| Heater control circuit Bank A high input                     |                | on                                       | Outside iimits          |           |           |              | 0.432s<br>0.4s (2004<br>model year)<br>0.43s (2008<br>model year) | Cycles            |  |  |
| Heater control<br>circuit Bank B<br>downstream<br>high input | P0058          | Heater resistance when on                | Outside limits          |           | Disable:  | P1609, P0603 | 0.432s<br>0.4s (2004<br>model year)<br>0.43s (2008<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 36 of 152



#### 6.3.5 Downstream Oxygen Sensors Heater Circuit Low

Heater resistance checks are performed when the heater is commanded off. If resistance values are outside of the limits, then a failure is flagged.

#### 6.3.6 Monitoring Structure

|                             | Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor Operation |  |                               |           |           |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/                  | Fault                                  | Monitoring Strategy  | Malfunction                   | Threshold | Secondary | Enable     | Time   | MIL                                    |  |  |  |  |
| System                      | Codes                                  | Description  | Criteria                      | value     | Parameter | Conditions | Required   |  |  |  |  |  |
| circuit Bank A<br>low input | P0057                                  | Heater resistance check when off  Heater resistance check when off | Outside limits Outside limits |           |           |            | 0.432s<br>0.4s (2004<br>model year)<br>0.43s (2008<br>model year)<br>0.432s<br>0.4s (2004<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |
|                             |  |  |                               |           | Disable:  |            | 0.43s (2008<br>model year)   |  |  |  |  |  |

# 6.3.7 Downstream Oxygen Sensors No Activity Detected

The monitor is single shot monitor (runs once per trip), which is designed to operate only when the sensor has been lit off (up to operating temperature). The monitor can be sub divided into two sections:

#### Stuck low

(Output voltage less than calibrated threshold (0.4 volts).

The monitor initially examines the fuelling control to ensure the system is stable, that linear airflow rate closed loop control, and sub feedback execution has been invoked. Once these conditions are satisfied and a calibrated load/airflow has been achieved, a lean stuck timer is incremented. The monitor then checks the output voltage from the sensor and sets a normal end judgment if a calibrated change in sensor output voltage is observed. If the change in sensor voltage is not detected and the lean stuck timer exceeds the failure threshold, and the associated failure conditions are satisfied, then a failure end judgment is made.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 37 of 152



#### Stuck high

(Output voltage greater than calibrated threshold (0.4 volts).

Again, the monitor strategy checks for stable air fuel ratio control prior to commencing the examination of the sensors output voltage. The monitor then utilizes the lean switching characteristics of the sensor during an over run fuel cut off (where the sensors output voltage tends towards 0 volts), to determine its correct operation. Finally, if the duration of the fuel cut off exceeds a calibrated period and the output voltage of the sensor is greater than calibrated threshold, then a failure judgment is set.

# 6.3.8 Monitoring Structure

|               |       | Heated Oxyg         | gen Sensor Monitor | Operation -     | Up to 2004 Model Ye        | ar                 |               |         |
|---------------|-------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|--------------------|---------------|---------|
| Component/    | Fault | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction        | Threshold       | Secondary                  | Enable             | Time          | MIL     |
| System        | Codes | Description         | Criteria           | value           | Parameter                  | Conditions         | Required      |         |
| D/s HO2S Bank | P0140 | D/s HO2S voltage    | Sensor voltage     | < 0.4 volts for | Heater energy              | > 524 Joules       | 600s          | 2 Drive |
| A no activity |       |                     |                    | 600s            | Airflow                    | > 10 g/s           |               | Cycles  |
| D/s HO2S Bank |       |                     |                    |                 | Engine speed               | > 1500 RPM         |               |         |
| B no activity | P0160 |                     |                    |                 | Engine Coolant Temperature |                    |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    | > 0.4 volts     | Intake Air Temperature     | -10 °C             |               | 2 Drive |
|               |       |                     |                    | during fuel cut | Short term fuel trim       | 0.75 – 1.25        |               | Cycles  |
|               |       |                     |                    | off             | Total fuel trim            | 0.5 – 1.5          | 3.8s          |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 | Sub feedback control       | Executing          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 | Linear air fuel control    | Executing          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 | Atmospheric pressure       | >= 70 kPa          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 |                            | >= 0 kPa (2004     |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 | Fuellevel                  | model year V6 S-   |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 | Fuel level                 | Type)<br>> 11%     |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 | Disable:                   | P1313, P1314, P131 | 6, P0106 - P0 | 108,    |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 |                            | P0116 – P0118, P01 | 25, P1367, P1 | 368,    |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 |                            | P0444, P0445, P011 | 1 - P0113, P1 | 234,    |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 |                            | P1236, P1338, P010 | 1 – P0103, P1 | 104,    |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 |                            | P1637, P1642, P060 |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 |                            | P0128, P1229, P122 |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 |                            | P1251, P1631, P161 |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                    |                 |                            | P0443, P0222, P022 |               |         |
|               |       |                     | 1                  |                 |                            | P0181- P0183 C116  | 5, C1175, C11 | 37      |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 38 of 152



|  | Bank A<br>Bank B | P0131 – P0133, P0171, P0172, P0351, P0353, P0355, P0357, P0201, P0203, P0205, P0207 P0031, P0032, P0037, P0038 P0151 – P0153, P0174, P0175, P0352, P0354, P0356, P0358 P0202, P0204, P0206, P0208 P0051, P0052, P0057, P0058. |
|--|------------------|---|
|--|------------------|---|

|   | He             | ated Oxygen Sensor Me | onitor Operation – Fi | rom 2004 M                         | odel Year (XK8, S-Ty   | oe and new XJ)   |  |  |
|---|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/                                      | Fault          | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction           | Threshold                          | Secondary  | Enable   | Time   | MIL                                    |
| System  | Codes          | Description           | Criteria              | value                              | Parameter  | Conditions   | Required   |  |
| D/s HO2S Bank<br>A no activity<br>D/s HO2S Bank | P0140<br>P0160 | D/s HO2S voltage      | Sensor voltage        |                                    | Engine speed Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Atmospheric pressure  | >= 524 Joules<br>>= 10 g/s<br>>= 1500 RPM<br>>= 40 °C<br>>= -10 °C<br>>= 70 kPa<br>> 11%   |  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|   |                |                       |                       | with movement<br>of<br>< 0.2 volts | Total fuel trim Sub feedback control Over run fuel cut off duration  |  | 600s<br>3.8s (XK8)<br>3.5s (XJ)<br>5s (S-Type)   |  |
|   |                |                       |                       | Disable:<br>Bank A<br>Bank B       | C1137, C1145, C1155, C1165 P0107, P0108, P0111, P0112 P0122, P0123, P0125, P0128 P0193, P0222, P0223, P0441 P1104, P1224, P1229, P1233 P1316, P1338, P1339, P1367 P1637, P1642 P0031, P0032, P0037, P0038 P0201, P0203, P0205, P0207 P0051, P0052, P0057, P0058 P0202, P0204< P0206, P0208 | , P0113, P0116, P01<br>, P0181, P0182, P01<br>, P0443, P0444, P04<br>, P1234, P1236, P12<br>, P1368, P1609, P16<br>, P0131, P0132, P01<br>, P0351, P0353, P03<br>, P0151, P0152, P01 | 17, P0118, P0<br>83, P0191, P0<br>45, P0460, P0<br>51, P1313, P1<br>11, P1631, P1<br>33, P0171, P0<br>55, P0357<br>53, P0174, P0 | 121,<br>192,<br>603,<br>314,<br>633,   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 39 of 152



|               |       | Heated Oxygen S     | Sensor Monitor Opera        | ation – Fro | m 2004 Model Year (X-                                    | -Type)                   |               |         |
|---------------|-------|---------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|--|--------------------------|---------------|---------|
| Component/    | Fault | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction                 | Threshold   | Secondary  | Enable                   | Time          | MIL     |
| System        | Codes | Description         | Criteria                    | value       | Parameter  | Conditions               | Required      |         |
| D/s HO2S Bank | P0140 | D/s HO2S voltage    | Sensor voltage              | < 0.5 v     | Heater control   | Active                   | 151s          | 2 Drive |
| A no activity |       |                     |                             |             | 3,   | >= 180 watts sec         |               | Cycles  |
| D/s HO2S Bank |       |                     |                             |             |  | >=15 g/s                 |               |         |
| B no activity | P0160 |                     |                             |             | 3 - 1  | >= 1500 RPM              |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             | Engine Coolant Temperature                               |                          |               | 2 Drive |
|               |       |                     |                             |             |  | -10 to 119 °C            |               | Cycles  |
|               |       |                     |                             |             |  | >= 74.5 kPa              |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             |  | 30s                      |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             | 3  | 0.75 to 1                |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             |  | Active                   |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             | Dia alala   | Over run fuel cut off duration                           |                          | 00 00400 0    | 100     |
|               |       |                     |                             | Disable:    | C1137, C1145, C1155, C1165                               |                          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             | P0107, P0108, P0111, P0112                               |                          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             | P0122, P0123, P0125, P0128                               |                          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             | P0193, P0222, P0223, P0441<br>P1104, P1224, P1229, P1233 |                          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             | P1316, P1338, P1339, P1367                               |                          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             | P1637, P1642   | , F1300, F1009, F10      | 11, F1031, F1 | 033,    |
|               |       |                     | Disable Additions (2005 mod | lel vear):  | P0069, P0335, P0336, P0607                               | DOG27 DOG28 DOG2         | 0 D2118 D24   | 110     |
|               |       |                     | Disable Additions (2005 mod | iei yeai).  | P2135, P2228, P2229, P2632                               |                          |               | 113,    |
|               |       |                     |                             | Bank A      | P0031, P0032, P0037, P0038                               |                          |               | 172     |
|               |       |                     |                             | Darik / (   | P0201, P0203, P0205, P0207                               |                          |               | , , , , |
|               |       |                     |                             | Bank B      | P0051, P0052, P0057, P0058                               |                          |               | 175     |
|               |       |                     |                             | Dank D      | P0202, P0204< P0206, P0208                               |                          |               |         |
|               |       |                     |                             |             | . 5252, 1 525 1 1 5255, 1 5256                           | 5, 1 0002, 1 000 1, 1 00 |               |         |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 40 of 152



|  |                | Heated Oxy                           | gen Sensor M                  | Ionitor O       | peration – 2008 Model Yea r (   | (X-Type)   |                  |                   |
|--|----------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|---|--|------------------|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System   | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description   | Malfunction<br>Criteria       | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required | MIL               |
| Oxygen Sensors Downstream (HO2S) D/s HO2S A bank no activity D/s HO2S B bank no activity | P0140<br>P0160 | D/s HO2S sensor voltage<br>behaviour | D/s HO2S voltage<br>max - min | < 0.35 V        | Closed Loop Fuelling Fuel tank level D/s HO2S Voltage check (P0137/57 & P0138/58 diagnostic) Battery voltage Accumulated Mass Air Flow (This accumulates if: Atmospheric pressure Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Afterstart counter  Accumulated Heater Duty (This accumulates if: MAF accumulation conditions Heater control Accumulated HO2S heater energy Engine Speed Target lambda  An over run fuel cut off has occurred, duration | -10 < T < 120 degC<br>-10 < IAT < 120 degC<br>>= 20 s)<br>>= 1400<br>True<br>Active<br>>= 180 Watt Seconds |                  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 41 of 152



|   |                | Heated O                        | xygen Sensor            | Monitor         | Operation – 2008 Model Yea  | a r (X-Type)                               |                  |         |
|---|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|---|--|------------------|---------|
| Component/<br>System                                    | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions                       | Time<br>Required | MIL     |
| Oxygen<br>Sensors<br>Downstream<br>(HO2S)<br>D/s HO2S A | P0140          | D/s HO2S sensor                 | D/s HO2S voltage        | < 0.35 V        | Closed Loop Fuelling  | Active                                     |                  | 2 Drive |
| bank no activity  D/s HO2S B  bank no activity          | P0160          | voltage behaviour               | max - min               |                 | Fuel tank level D/s HO2S Voltage check (P0137/57 & P0138/58 diagnostic) Battery voltage Accumulated Mass Air Flow (This accumulates if: Atmospheric pressure Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Afterstart counter | -10 < T < 120 degC<br>-10 < IAT < 120 degC |                  | Cycles  |
|   |                |                                 |                         |                 | Accumulated Heater Duty (This accumulates if:  MAF accumulation conditions Heater control Accumulated HO2S heater energy Engine Speed Target lambda  An over run fuel cut off has occurred, duration                              | Active >= 180 Watt Seconds                 |                  |         |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 42 of 152



### 6.3.9 Upstream Oxygen Sensors Circuit

This monitors the upstream O2S element current. If the current is above or below a calibrated value, and the stable operating conditions are satisfied, a failure timer is incremented, otherwise a normal timer is incremented. Upon exceeding the calibrated thresholds for either the failure/normal timers, an appropriate failure/normal end judgment is set.

# **6.3.10 Monitoring Structure**

|                               |                |                                    | Heated Oxyge               | n Sensor        | Monitor Operation  |   |                      |                   |
|-------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|--|---|----------------------|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System          | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria    | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions  | Time<br>Require<br>d | MIL               |
| U/s HO2S Bank<br>A low input  | P0131          | Element current                    | Element current stuck low  | <= - 15.0 mA    | Closed loop fuelling<br>Sub feedback control<br>U/s HO2S voltage<br>Engine speed | Active Active 0.2 – 0.85 volts >= 1500 RPM  | 10s                  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| U/s HO2S Bank<br>B low input  | P0151          |                                    |                            |                 | After start time Vehicle speed Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature | >= 0.9s<br>>= 9 mph<br>>= 40 °C<br>>= - 40 °C<br>>= - 30 °C (2008)                                    | 10s                  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| U/s HO2S Bank<br>A high input | P0132          | Element current                    | Element current stuck high | >= 15.0 mA      | Atmospheric pressure<br>Mass Airflow<br>Delta load                               | >= 75 kPa<br>>= 10 g/s<br>< 3.125 g/revolutions/s for<br>>2s<br>(=< 0.05 g/revolutions/s for<br>3.0L) |                      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                               |                |                                    |                            |                 | Element impedance  | 20 – 60 ohms<br>0 – 60 ohm (X-Type)   |                      |                   |
| U/s HO2S Bank<br>B high input | P0152          |                                    |                            |                 | Purge vapor concentration or<br>Purge<br>Fuel cut off                            | >= 0.9  Not active Not active   |                      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                               |                |                                    |                            |                 | Disable:<br>Bank A<br>Bank B<br>Disable:<br>Bank A<br>Bank B                     | P0132<br>P0152<br>P0131<br>P0151  |                      |                   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 43 of 152



#### 6.3.11 Upstream Oxygen Sensors Slow Response

The failure criteria for this monitor is the measurement of the time taken for the upstream sensor to attain a calibrated air fuel ratio reading following fuel reinstatement after an over run fuel cut off. The slow response monitor measures the response time of the sensor to react when the air fuel ratio changes from a known lean state to a known non-lean state. The monitor operates after fuelling has been reinstated and the engine management system is in ISC mode, following a period of fuel cut off. If all execution conditions are satisfied the monitor increments a response timer, if the timer exceeds a failure threshold prior to the sensor current switching back to a non-lean condition (6.97mA) a failure end judgment flag is set. If the current signal passes through the lean limit prior to the timer exceeding the failure threshold, then a normal end judgment is set. It should be noted that the slow response monitor is a single shot monitor, which only executes once per drive cycle.

#### Fuel Cut Off Operation

A timer is employed to ensure that a minimum period of fuel cut off is achieved prior to executing the monitor. This allows the sensors to respond to the lean air fuel ratio fuelling shift, which occurs during the period of fuel cut off.

#### **6.3.12 Monitoring Structure**

|               | Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor Operation – Up to 2004 Model Year |                                  |                    |                  |  |                |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|---------------|--|----------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|--|----------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/    | Fault  | Monitoring Strategy              | Malfunction        | Threshold        | Secondary  | Enable         | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |  |
| System        | Codes  | Description                      | Criteria           | value            | Parameter  | Conditions     | Required |         |  |  |  |  |
| U/s HO2S Bank | P0133  | Response time of sensor from     | Response rate time | 2.6s (4.2L NA)   | Engine speed   | 600 – 4000 RPM | < 5s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| A slow        |  | lean to rich after over run fuel |                    | > 4.02s (S-Type) | Airflow  | < 70 g/s       |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| response      |  | cut off                          |                    | > 3.2s (S/C)     | Engine Coolant Temperature                               | 70 to 110 °C   |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    |                  | Intake Air Temperature                                   | -30 to 100 °C  |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    |                  | Atmospheric pressure                                     | > 68 kPa       |          |         |  |  |  |  |
| U/s HO2S Bank | P0153  |                                  |                    |                  | Element impedance  | 20 to 60 ohm   |          | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| B slow        |  |                                  |                    |                  | Throttle closed flag                                     | Set            |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| response      |  |                                  |                    |                  | Fuel cut off time  | 2 – 40s        |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    | D:               | Closed loop fuelling                                     | Active         | <br>     |         |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    | Disable:         | P1316, P0106–P0108, P0116–                               |                |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    |                  | P0111–P0113, P1313, P1314,                               |                |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    |                  | P0101- P0103, P1104, P1637, P1224, P0121-P0123, P0222, I | , ,            | , ,      | ,       |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    |                  | P0441, P0443, P0181-P0183, I                             | , ,            | , ,      | ,       |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    | Bank A           | P0132, P0131, P0137, P0138,                              | ,              | , ,      |         |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    | Dank A           | P0355, P0357, P0201, P0203,                              |                |          | 333,    |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    | Bank B           | P0152, P0151, P0157, P0158,                              |                |          | 354.    |  |  |  |  |
|               |  |                                  |                    |                  | P0356, P0358, P0202, P0204,                              |                |          | ,       |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 44 of 152



|               |       | Heated Oxyg                      | jen Sensor Mo        | nitor Operation    | on – From 2004 Model \        | /ear                               |   |         |
|---------------|-------|----------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|---------|
| Component/    | Fault | Monitoring Strategy              | Malfunction          | Threshold          | Secondary                     | Enable                             | Time                                    | MIL     |
| System        | Codes | Description                      | Criteria             | value              | Parameter                     | Conditions                         | Required                                |         |
| U/s HO2S Bank | P0133 | Response time of sensor from     | Response rate time   | >= 3.5s (X-Type)   | Engine speed                  | 600 – 4000 RPM                     |   | 2 Drive |
| A slow        |       | lean to rich after over run fuel |                      | >= 4.0s (S-Type)   | Airflow                       | < 70 g/s                           | 4.0s (S-Type)                           | Cycles  |
| response      |       | cut off                          |                      |                    | Engine Coolant Temperature    | 70 to 110 °C                       | 2.6s (XJ N/A)                           |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | Intake Air Temperature        |                                    | 3.2s (XJ S/C)                           |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | Atmospheric pressure          |                                    | 2.6s (XK8 N/A)                          |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      | >= 4.0s (XK8 S/C)  | Element impedance             |                                    | 4.0s (XK8 S/C)                          |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    |                               | 20 to 60 ohm (XK8)                 |   |         |
| II/ IIOOO D   | D0450 |                                  |                      |                    | T 1. 1.0                      | 0 to 60 ohm (X-Type)               |   |         |
| U/s HO2S Bank | P0153 |                                  |                      |                    | Throttle closed flag          | Set                                |   | 2 Drive |
| B slow        |       |                                  |                      |                    | Fuel cut off time             | 2 to 60s (X-Type)                  |   | Cycles  |
| response      |       |                                  |                      |                    |                               | 4 to 60s (S-Type)<br>2 to 40s (XJ) |   |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | Closed loop fuelling          | Active                             |   |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      | Disable:           | C1137, C1145, C1155, C1165, ( |                                    | P0103 P0106                             | P0107   |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | P0108, P0111, P0112, P0113, F |                                    |   |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | P0125, P0128, P0181, P0182, F |                                    |   |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | P0441, P0443, P0444, P0445, F |                                    |   |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | P1234, P1236, P1251, P1313, F |                                    |   |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | P1609, P1611, P1631, P1633, F |                                    | , | ,       |
|               |       |                                  | Disable additions (2 | 2005 model year X- | P0069, P0335, P0336, P0607,P  | 0627, P0628, P0629, F              | 2118, P2119, P                          | 2135,   |
|               |       |                                  | Type):               | ·                  | P2228, P2229, P2632, P2633, F | 2634, P2635, P2636                 |   |         |
|               |       |                                  |                      | Bank A             | P0132, P0131, P0137, P0138, F | 20140 P0172 P0171 I                | P0351 P0353 F                           | P0355   |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | P0357, P0201, P0203, P0205, F |                                    |   | 0000,   |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | P0152, P0151, P0157, P0158, F |                                    | P0352. P0354. F                         | P0356.  |
|               |       |                                  |                      |                    | P0358, P0202, P0204, P0206, F |                                    | ,, -                                    | ,       |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 45 of 152



|  |       | Heated Oxygen   | Sensor Monito   | or Operat | ion – 2008 Model Yea   | r (X-Type)  |  |  |
|--|-------|---|---|-----------|--|---|--|--|
| Component/   | Fault | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction   | Threshold | ,  | Enable  | Time   | MIL  |
| System   | Codes | Description   | Criteria  | value     | Parameter  | Conditions  | Required   |  |
| Oxygen Sensors Upstream (U/S HO2S) U/s HO2S A slow response U/s HO2S B slow response | P0133 | Accumulated response time to forced fuelling dither during steady state driving. (Test runs twice, 15 seconds each time, separated by a minimum of 5 seconds) | Ratio of amplitude difference between the A/F control and the u/s HO2S output | < 0.3     | CL A/F control  Catalyst Diagnostic  Time after start Engine Speed Vehicle speed Engine Load Mass Airflow  Engine Coolant Temperature Atmospheric pressure Element impedance Engine load change Throttle angle change Purge  Accelerator pedal movement  Fault Codes that disable Bank A | Active  Not in Progress  >= 180 s  1400 < N < 3500 rpm  0 <= v <= 420 mph  0.22 < Load < 0.80 g/s  6.2 < MAF < 35 g/s  >= 68.1 degC  >= 68 kPa  20 < R < 80 ohm  <= 0.40 g/rev/0.128 s  <= 10.0 deg/0.128 s  Not active, or vapour concentration <= 1.0  >= 10 deg/0.256 s on less than 5 occasions during execution of this diagnostic  P0300 P0301 P0303 P0305 P030 P1313 P1314 P1316 P0132 P013 P0140 P0172 P0171 P2229 P222 P0117 P0116 P0125 P0351 P038 P1368 P0201 P0203 P0205 P000 P0445 P0443 P0112 P0113 P017 P0628 P0629 P0102 P0103 P110 P1642 P0603 P0460 P1609 P012 P0191 P0181 C0037 C003A P05 P0122 P0123 P0222 P0223 P213 P0607 P1633 | 35 s<br>35 s<br>35 s<br>31 P0138 F<br>28 P0069 F<br>33 P0355 F<br>31 P0032 F<br>11 P0627 F<br>04 P0101 F<br>28 P0193 F<br>01 P2119 F | 20137<br>20118<br>21367<br>20444<br>22635<br>21637<br>20192<br>22118 |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 46 of 152



|            |       | Heated Oxyger       | Sensor Monit | tor Operati | on – 2008 Model Yea      | r (X-Type)                  |             |      |
|------------|-------|---------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|------|
| Component/ | Fault | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction  | Threshold   | Secondary                | Enable                      | Time        | MIL  |
| System     | Codes | Description         | Criteria     | value       | Parameter                | Conditions                  | Required    |      |
|            |       | •                   |              |             | Fault codes that disable |                             |             |      |
|            |       |                     |              |             | Bank B                   | P0300 P0301 P0303 P0305 P03 | 02 P0304 P  | 0306 |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P1313 P1314 P1316 P0152 P01 |             |      |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P0160 P0175 P0174 P2229 P22 |             |      |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P0117 P0116 P0125 P0352 P03 |             |      |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P1368 P0202 P0204 P0206 P00 |             | -    |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P0445 P0443 P0112 P0113 P01 |             |      |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P0628 P0629 P0102 P0103 P11 | 04 P0101 P  | 1637 |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P1642 P0603 P0460 P1609 P01 | 28 P0193 P  | 0192 |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P0191 P0181 C0037 C003A P05 | 501 P2119 F | 2118 |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P0122 P0123 P0222 P0223 P21 | 35 P1251 P  | 1631 |
|            |       |                     |              |             |                          | P0607 P1633                 |             |      |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 47 of 152



# 6.3.13 Upstream Oxygen Sensors Heater Circuit

The control module monitors the heater current to be within limits. If a failure is detected, the control module responds by setting the appropriate signal failure code. On detection of a failure code the monitor proceeds to increment a failure timer and a judgment is made if the failure timer exceeds a calibrated threshold. If a failure code is not present, then the monitor increments a normal judgment timer and sets a judgment upon exceeding a calibrated threshold.

# **6.3.14 Monitoring Structure**

|                                  | Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor Operation |                                 |                |           |              |                           |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|----------------|-----------|--------------|---------------------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/                       | Fault                                  | Monitoring Strategy             | Malfunction    | Threshold | Secondary    | Enable                    | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |  |
| System                           | Codes                                  | Description                     | Criteria       | value     | Parameter    | Conditions                | Required |         |  |  |  |  |
| Heater control                   | P0031                                  | Control module monitors heater  | Outside limits |           | HO2S control | Executing                 | 3.6s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| circuit Bank A                   |  | for current to be within limits |                |           | Heater on    | >= 1.02s (2008)           |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| low input                        |  |                                 |                |           |              |                           |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|                                  |  |                                 | Outside limits |           | HO2S control | Executing                 | 3.6s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| circuit Bank A                   |  | for current to be within limits |                |           | Heater on    | >= 1.02s (2008)           |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| high input                       | D0054                                  |                                 |                |           | 11000        | ·                         | 0.0      | 0.0     |  |  |  |  |
|                                  |  |                                 | Outside limits |           | HO2S control | Executing                 | 3.6s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| circuit Bank B                   |  | for current to be within limits |                |           | Heater on    | >= 1.02s (2008)           |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| low input                        | P0052                                  | Control module monitors heater  | Outside limits |           | HO2S control | Evecution                 | 3.6s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| Heater control<br>circuit Bank B |  | for current to be within limits | Outside ilmits |           | Heater on    | Executing >= 1.02s (2008) | 3.08     |         |  |  |  |  |
| high input                       |  | lor carrent to be within limits |                |           | i leater on  | >= 1.025 (2006)           |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| ingii iiput                      |  |                                 |                |           | Disable:     | P1609, P0603              |          |         |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 48 of 152



# **6.3.15 Drive Cycle Information**

| 11 | pstream |         | on co | ncore  |
|----|---------|---------|-------|--------|
| u  | ustrean | ıı oxva | en se | 115015 |

Drive cycle under review.

#### Downstream oxygen sensors:

Drive cycle under review.

#### Oxygen sensor heaters:

Drive cycle under review.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 49 of 152



#### 6.4 Electronic Control Module

The control function within the ECM enables hardware checks to be performed on the sensors. These DTCs will reflect sensor open circuit and short circuit faults along with heater faults. In addition to sensor fault monitoring these DTCs will also reflect failures of the control functions themselves. The sensor impedance is also monitored to ensure that its impedance is below the required level for correct operation after the sensor has been active for the required time.

# **6.4.1 Monitoring Structure**

|                                    | Heated Oxygen Sensor Monitor Operation |                                    |   |                                      |                                |                          |   |                   |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|---|-------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/<br>System               | Fault<br>Code<br>s                     | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria   | Threshold value                      | Secondary<br>Parameter         | Enable<br>Conditions     | Time<br>Required  | MIL               |  |  |  |  |
| Control module open/shorted Bank A | P1646                                  | Control module hardware checks     | Heater failure<br>Sensor open circuit<br>Sensor short circuit<br>Module failure | Failed<br>Failed<br>Failed<br>Failed | Sensor control                 | Executing<br>Ignition on | 8.0s<br>8.0s<br>8.0s<br>8.0s<br>All 3.6s (2004<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |
| Control module open/shorted Bank B | P1647                                  |                                    | Sensor impedance  | > 60 ohms                            | Sensor control active Disable: | >= 60s<br>P0603          | 20s<br>20.5s (2008)   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |

# **6.4.2 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 50 of 152

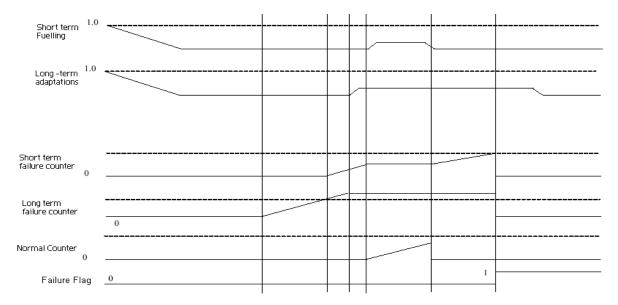


#### 6.5 Fuel System Monitor

The monitor operates continuously throughout the trip. The monitor timing is every 0.128 seconds. The monitor compares the long term adaptions for the current load site against a failure threshold. If the adaptions for that site are greater than the failure threshold, the long term failure counter is incremented. If this counter reaches a calibrated time, the monitor looks at the short term fuelling trim and compares this against another threshold. The short term failure counter is incremented and if this counter reaches its failure threshold then a failure is flagged.

The normal counter operates when both long term and short term fuelling is within the thresholds. If the normal counter reaches its calibrated time then both failure counters are reset.

The diagram below shows the flagging of a rich failure on Bank Aof an engine:



Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 51 of 152



# 6.5.1 Monitoring Structure

|                           |       | Fue   | System Monitor (V8                        | 3) – Up to 200   | 04 Model Year  |                     |               |                   |
|---------------------------|-------|---|---|------------------|--|---------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| Component/                | Fault | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction                               | Threshold        | Secondary  | Enable              | Time          | MIL               |
| System                    | Codes | Description   | Criteria                                  | value            | Parameter  | Conditions          | Required      |                   |
| Bank A                    | P0171 | Long term fuelling drift and short term feedback compensation |   |                  | Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature                                      | > 75 °C<br>> -30 °C | 15s           | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Fuel too lean –<br>Bank B | P0174 | values outside limits   | Total air fuel rate feedback compensation | > +19%           | Closed loop fuelling<br>Fuel level   | Active<br>> 11%     |               | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Fuel too rich<br>– Bank A | P0172 |   | Long term adaptions                       | < -17% and       |  |                     |               | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Fuel too rich<br>– Bank B | P0175 |   | Total air fuel rate feedback compensation | < -16%           |  |                     |               | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                           |       |   |   | 6, P1338, P0102, | P0116, P0117, P0118, P0125, P<br>P0103, P1104, P0101, P1642, P0<br>P0183, P1233, P1339 |                     |               |                   |
|                           |       |   | P0133, P0137, P0138, P014<br>P0038        | 0, P0351, P0353, | P0355, P0357 P0201, P0203, P0  | 205, P0207, P00     | 031, P0032, P | 0037,             |
|                           |       | Bank B  | P0153, P0157, P0158, P016<br>P0058        | 0, P0352, P0354, | P0356, P0358, P0202, P0204, P0   | 0206, P0208, P0     | 051, P0052, F | P0057,            |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 52 of 152



|                           |       | Fuel                          | System Monitor (V8                 | ) – From 200                 | 4 Model Year             |                         |                     |          |
|---------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|----------|
| Component/                | Fault | Monitoring Strategy           | Malfunction                        | Threshold                    | Secondary                | Enable                  | Time                | MIL      |
| System                    | Codes | Description                   | Criteria                           | value                        | Parameter                | Conditions              | Required            |          |
| Fuel too lean –           | P0171 | Long term fuel trim and short | Long term fuel trim                | >= +18% (XK8)                | Fuel level               | >= 11%                  | 15s plus            | 2 Drive  |
| Bank A                    |       | term fuel trim values outside |                                    | >= +19% (XJ)                 | Transient fuelling       | <= 4 (+/-)              |                     | Cycles   |
| Fuel too lean –           | P0174 | limits                        |                                    | >= +19% (XK8)                | compensation             |                         | 15s                 |          |
| Bank B                    |       |                               |                                    | >= +19% (XJ)                 |                          |                         |                     | 2 Drive  |
|                           | D0470 |                               |                                    | 470( ()(1(0)                 |                          |                         |                     | Cycles   |
|                           | P0172 |                               |                                    | >= -17% (XK8)                |                          |                         | 15s plus            | 2 Drive  |
| Bank A                    | D0475 |                               |                                    | >= -20% (XJ)                 |                          |                         | 15-                 | Cycles   |
| Fuel too rich<br>- Bank B | P0175 |                               |                                    | >= -16% (XK8)<br>>= -25%(XJ) |                          |                         | 15s                 | 2 Drive  |
| - Dalik D                 |       |                               |                                    | >= -25%(\J)                  |                          |                         |                     | Cycles   |
|                           |       | Disable:                      | P0101, P0102, P0103, P010          | ı<br>6. P0107. P0108.        | P0111, P0112, P0113, P0  | ı<br>116. P0117. P0118. | ı<br>. P0125. P0128 | . ,      |
|                           |       |                               | P0182, P0183, P0191, P019          |                              |                          |                         |                     |          |
|                           |       |                               | P1313, P1314, P1316, P133          | 8, P1339, P1367,             | P1368, P1609, P1642.     |                         | ,                   | ,        |
|                           |       |                               |                                    |                              |                          |                         |                     |          |
|                           |       |                               | P0133, P0137, P0138, P014<br>P0038 | .0, P0351, P0353,            | P0335, P0357 P0201, P02  | 03, P0205, P0207,       | P0031, P0032,       | P0037,   |
|                           |       |                               | P0153, P0157, P0158, P016<br>P0058 | 0, P0352, P0354,             | P0356, P0358, P0202, P02 | 204, P0206, P0208       | , P0051, P0052      | , P0057, |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 53 of 152



|  |                | Fuel  | System Monitor (V6                 | 6) – Up to 20  | 004 Model Year   |  |               |                                      |
|--|----------------|---|------------------------------------|----------------|--|--|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| Component/   | Fault          | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction                        | Threshold      | Secondary  | Enable                                 | Time          | MIL                                  |
| System   | Codes          | Description   | Criteria                           | value          | Parameter  | Conditions                             | Required      |                                      |
| Fuel too lean –<br>Bank A<br>Fuel too lean –<br>Bank B | P0171<br>P0174 | Long term fuelling drift and short term feedback compensation values outside limits |                                    | > 25%          | Engine Coolant Temperature<br>Intake Air Temperature<br>Closed loop fuelling<br>Fuel level | > 75 °C<br>> -30 °C<br>Active<br>> 11% | 60s           | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>2 Drive         |
| Fuel too rich –<br>Bank A<br>Fuel too rich –<br>Bank B | P0172<br>P0175 |   | , ,                                | < 18%<br>< 25% |  |  |               | Cycles 2 Drive Cycles 2 Drive Cycles |
|  |                |   |                                    | 6, P1338, P010 | 8, P0116, P0117, P0118, P0125,<br>2, P0103, P1104, P0101, P1642,<br>2, P0183, P1233, P1339 |  |               | P0111,                               |
|  |                |   | P0133, P0137, P0138, P014<br>P0038 | 0, P0351, P035 | 3, P0335, P0357 P0201, P0203, F  | P0205, P0207, P0                       | 031, P0032, F | P0037,                               |
|  |                |   | P0153, P0157, P0158, P016<br>P0058 | 0, P0352, P035 | 4, P0356, P0358, P0202, P0204,   | P0206, P0208, P0                       | 0051, P0052,  | P0057,                               |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 54 of 152



|                           |             | Fuel   | System Monitor (                           | V6) – From 200                                  | 4 Model Year   |                      |                 |                              |
|---------------------------|-------------|--|--|---|--|----------------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| Component/                | Fault       | Monitoring Strategy  | Malfunction                                | Threshold                                       | Secondary  | Enable               | Time            | MIL                          |
| System                    | Codes       | Description  | Criteria                                   | value   | Parameter  | Conditions           | Required        |                              |
| Bank A<br>Fuel too lean – |             | Long term fuel trim and short<br>term fuel trim values outside<br>limits | Long term fuel trim<br>Short tem fuel trim | >= +18% (S-Type)<br>>= +19% (X-Type)<br>>= +25% | Fuel level Transient fuelling compensation                                 | >= 11%<br><= 4 (+/-) | 30s plus<br>30s | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>2 Drive |
| – Bank A                  | P0172       |  | g  | >= -18%   |  |                      | 30s plus        | Cycles<br>2 Drive<br>Cycles  |
| Fuel too rich<br>– Bank B | P0175       |  | Short tem fuel trim                        | >= -25%   |  |                      | 30s             | 2 Drive<br>Cvcles            |
|                           |             |  |  | 0192, P0193, P0441,                             | P0111, P0112, P0113, P0<br>P0443, P0444, P0445, P0<br>P1368, P1609, P1642. |                      |                 |                              |
|                           | Disable add | litions (X-Type 2005 model year):  | P0069, P0627, P0628, P                     | 0629, P2228, P2229,                             | P2632, P2633, P2634, P26   | 635, P2636.          |                 |                              |
|                           |             |  | P0133, P0137, P0138, P<br>P0038            | 0140, P0351, P0353,                             | P0355, P0357 P0201, P02  | 03, P0205, P0207,    | P0031, P0032    | , P0037,                     |
|                           |             |  | P0153, P0157, P0158, P<br>P0058            | 0160, P0352, P0354,                             | P0356, P0358, P0202, P02   | 204, P0206, P0208    | , P0051, P0052  | 2, P0057,                    |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 55 of 152



|                           |       |  | Fuel System Moni               | itor (V6) – 200       | 08 Model Year                   |   |   |   |
|---------------------------|-------|--|--------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|---|---|---|
| Component/                | Fault | Monitoring Strategy                            | Malfunction                    | Threshold             | Secondary                       | Enable  | Time  | MIL   |
| System                    | Codes | Description                                    | Criteria                       | value                 | Parameter                       | Conditions  | Required  |   |
| Fuel System               |       | •  |                                |                       |                                 |   |   |   |
| Fuel too lean<br>- Bank A | P0171 | Long Term Fuel Trim outside limit for time     | Long Term Fuel Trim            | >= 118 %              | Battery voltage                 | >= 10.0 V   | 60 s  | 2 Drive   |
| Fuel too lean<br>- Bank B | P0174 | period & Short                                 | <u>And</u>                     | (for 30 s)            | Engine Start                    | Not in progress   |   | Cycles  |
| Fuel too rich<br>- Bank A | P0172 | Term Fuel Trim outside<br>limit for additional | Short Term Fuel Trim           | >= 125 %              | Ignition turned on              | For at least 2.0 s  |   |   |
| Fuel too rich<br>- Bank B | P0175 | time period                                    |                                | (for 30 s)            | Transient fuelling compensation | < 4 %   |   |   |
|                           |       |  | <u>Or</u>                      |                       | Fuel level                      | >= 11 %   |   |   |
|                           |       |  | Long Term Fuel Trim <u>And</u> | <= 82 %<br>(for 30 s) | (for lean faults only)          |   |   |   |
|                           |       |  | Short Term Fuel Trim           | <= 75 %               |                                 |   |   |   |
|                           |       |  |                                | (for 30 s)            | Fault Codes that disable        | Boood Boood Boood Bo  |   | D0004   |
|                           |       |  |                                |                       | P0171 & P0172                   | P0306 P1313 P1314 P1<br>P0137 P0140 P2229 P2<br>P0117 P0116 P0125 P0<br>P1367 P1368 P0201 P0<br>P0032 P0444 P0445 P0<br>P0111 P0627 P2635 P0<br>P0103 P1104 P0101 P0<br>P1642 P0603 P0460 P1<br>P0192 P0191 P0181                         | 316 P0133<br>2228 P0069<br>0351 P0353<br>0203 P0205<br>0443 P0112<br>0628 P0629<br>0054 P0038 | P0138<br>P0118<br>P0355<br>P0031<br>P0113<br>P0102<br>P0037 |
|                           |       |  |                                |                       |                                 | P0300 P0301 P0303 P0<br>P0306 P1313 P1314 P1<br>P0157 P0160 P2229 P2<br>P0117 P0116 P0125 P0<br>P1367 P1368 P0202 P0<br>P0052 P0444 P0445 P0<br>P0111 P0627 P2635 P0<br>P0103 P1104 P0101 P0<br>P1642 P0603 P0460 P1<br>P0192 P0191 P0181 | 316 P0153<br>2228 P0069<br>0352 P0354<br>0204 P0206<br>0443 P0112<br>0628 P0629<br>0060 P0058 | P0158<br>P0118<br>P0356<br>P0051<br>P0113<br>P0102<br>P0057 |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 56 of 152



### 6.5.2 Fuel System Secondary Trim

On the X-Type from 2004 model year, a secondary monitor also checks the sub feedback trim levels. When the entry conditions are met, the sub feed back trim level is checked against a threshold. If it is either above or below a threshold, a counter is started, if at the end of the count the level is still above or below the threshold then an appropriate DTC is flagged.

# 6.5.3 Monitoring Structure

|                                 |       | Fuel System Mor            | nitor - Secondary Fu    | ıel Trim (X-1                 | Type From 2004 Model Ye  | ar)                              |                                |              |
|---------------------------------|-------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------|
| Component/                      | Fault | Monitoring Strategy        | Malfunction             | Threshold                     | Secondary  | Enable                           | Time                           | MIL          |
| System                          | Codes | Description                | Criteria                | value                         | Parameter  | Conditions                       | Required                       |              |
| Sub feedback too<br>lean Bank A | P2096 | Sub feedback outside limit | Sub feedback trim value | >= -3.49%                     | Mass Airflow<br>Engine Coolant Temperature<br>Fuel level   | >= 20 g/s<br>>= 60 °C<br>>= 10%  | 5s                             | 2DTC         |
| Sub feedback too<br>lean Bank B | P2098 |                            |                         |                               | Vapor concentration Sub feedback   | < 30 %<br>Executing              | 10 times                       | 2DTC         |
| Sub feedback too rich Bank A    | P2097 |                            | Sub feedback trim value | >= 3.49%                      |  |                                  |                                |              |
| Sub feedback too<br>rich Bank B | P2097 |                            |                         |                               |  |                                  |                                |              |
|                                 |       |                            |                         | Disable:                      | P0101, P0102, P0103, P0106, P01<br>P0116, P0117, P0118, P0125, P01<br>P0192, P0193, P0441, P0443, P04<br>P1233, P1234, P1236, P1313, P13<br>P1368, P1609, P1642. | 28, P0181, P01<br>44, P0445, P04 | 82, P0183, P0<br>60, P0603, P1 | 191,<br>104, |
|                                 |       |                            |                         | Disable (2005<br>model year): | P0069, P0101,P0102, P0103, P0192, P0193, P0443, P0444, P04 P0629, P1104, P1367, P1368, P16 P2633, P2634, P2635, P2636.   | 45, P0460, P06                   | 03, P0627, P0                  | 628,         |
|                                 |       |                            |                         | Bank A                        | P0133, P0137, P0138, P0140, P03<br>P0203, P0205, P0207, P0031, P00   |                                  |                                | 201,         |
|                                 |       |                            |                         | Bank B                        | P0153, P0157, P0158, P0160, P03<br>P0204, P0206, P0208, P0051, P00   | , ,                              | , ,                            | 202,         |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 57 of 152



|                      |                | Fuel System M                   | lonitor - Secondary     | Fuel Trin       | n (X-Type 2008 Model Y   | 'ear)   |   |  |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|--|---|---|--|
| Component/<br>System | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions  | Time<br>Required  | MIL  |
| •                    |                | 0 0,                            |                         |                 | Sub feedback Sub feedback is active, if: Engine Coolant Temperature Engine Speed Time Afterstart Feedback fuelling control D/s HO2S signal  Fault Codes that disable P2A01  Fault Codes that disable | Active  >= 80 degC <= 4000 rpm >= see table below Active  P0132 P0131 P0133 P0 P0172 P0171 P2229 P2 P0117 P0116 P0125 P0 P1367 P1368 P0201 P0 P0032 P0444 P0445 P0 P0628 P0629 P0102 P0 P0054 P0038 P0037 P1 P0460 P1646 P0193 P0 | Required  5 s  5 s  5 s  5 s  5 s  638 P0137 F  228 P0069 F  351 P0353 F  203 P0205 F  443 P0627 F  103 P1104 F  638 P1642 F  192 P0191 F  158 P0157 F  228 P0069 F  352 P0354 F  204 P0206 F | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>P0140<br>P0118<br>P0355<br>P0031<br>P2635<br>P0101<br>P0603<br>P0160<br>P0118<br>P0356<br>P0051 |
|                      |                |                                 |                         |                 |  | P0628 P0629 P0102 P0<br>P0060 P0058 P0057 P1<br>P0460 P1647 P0193 P0  | 638 P1642 F   | 20603  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 58 of 152



| Time After Start Entry Condition – DTCs P2A01 and P2A04 – (X400 2008 Model Year) |        |        |        |        |        |       |  |  |  |
|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--|--|--|
| ECT Temperature (degC)   | -30    | -10    | 10     | 25     | 50     | 75    |  |  |  |
| Time (s)   | 98.304 | 49.152 | 32.768 | 24.576 | 16.384 | 8.192 |  |  |  |

# 6.5.4 Drive Cycle Information

Drive cycle under review.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 59 of 152



#### 6.6 Evaporative Emissions System Monitor

The leak test monitor is designed to find any evaporative leak between 40 thou, (the EVAP reduces to 20 thou on V8 Sedan normally aspirated at 2001 model year) and a gross leak. The 40 thou test operates whilst the vehicle is moving and includes checks for canister closure valve stuck closed (restricted airflow on the fuel tank breather) and the EVAP canister purge valve stuck open (leaking). The EVAP canister closure valve stuck open and EVAP canister purge valve stuck closed is part of the gross leak judgment. The 20 thou leak test is an additional test, which is carried out at idle.

#### **DTCs**

P0442 40 thou (or larger) leak detected
P0443 EVAP canister purge valve malfunction EVAP canister purge valve circuit low electrical
P0444 EVAP canister purge valve circuit high electrical
P0445 EVAP canister closure valve malfunction restricted
P0446 EVAP canister closure valve open circuit electrical
P0447 EVAP canister closure valve short circuit electrical
P0448 EVAP canister closure valve short circuit electrical
P0450 Fuel Tank Pressure (FTP) sensor malfunction no change
P0451 FTP sensor low input electrical
P0452 FTP sensor high input electrical
P0455 gross leak

EVAP canister purge valve leaking electrical circuit check electrical circuit check restricted airflow through tank breather electrical circuit check electrical circuit check no change in output electrical circuit check electrical circuit check electrical circuit check

#### 6.6.1 Leak Test Operation

The leak test will be initialized when a number of entry conditions are satisfied. They will include Engine Coolant Temperature, Intake Air Temperature, engine load, vehicle speed, vapor concentration and purge amount.

#### 40 Thou Leak Test

P0456 20 thou leak

When the entry conditions are satisfied the EVAP canister purge valve will be closed and the EVAP canister closure valve will then close. The EVAP system is now sealed, the FTP sensor will take the initial value of pressure (P1). After 15 seconds the FTP sensor will take a further reading (P2). The difference between P1 and P2 becomes the first pressure rise.

The EVAP canister purge valve will then be ramped open to pull the FTP down to –2.00 kPa; the EVAP canister purge valve will then close. If the pressure rises too quickly then a second pull down will occur. The FTP sensor then takes a further reading of the tank pressure (P3). After a further 15 seconds a final pressure reading (P4) is taken. The difference between P3 and P4 becomes the second pressure rise.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 60 of 152

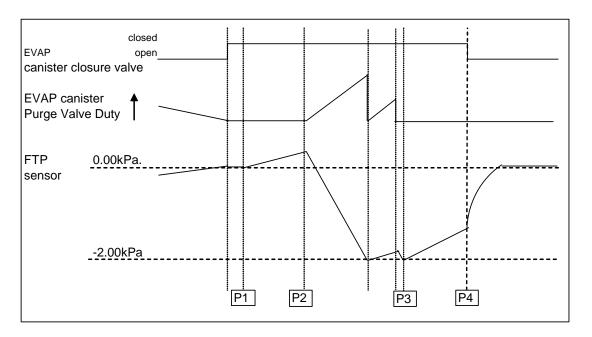


The EVAP canister closure valve is then opened and the leak value is calculated and compared with the pass/fail threshold. The result may be discarded if the vapor concentration is too high, the first pressure rise is too high or the fuel movement in the tank causes excessive vapor. If the pressure in the tank does not return close to atmospheric within a few seconds of the EVAP canister closure valve opening then the test will continue and may flag DTC P0446.

If the EVAP canister purge valve is ramped open and the tank is not pulled down to -2.00 kPa, a gross leak will be flagged. If however during the second pressure rise the tank pressure rises to a value, which would indicate that it couldn't be a gross leak.

Failure to pull the tank pressure down resulting in flagging P0455 can be due to a gross leak, vapor pipe detached / fuel cap left off etc. or the EVAP canister purge valve stuck closed or the EVAP canister closure valve stuck open.

#### Leak Test Diagram 40 Thou Test



#### 20 Thou Leak Test

The 20 thou leak test is similar to the diagram above, with the exception that the tank is pulled down to -1.25 kPa rather than -2.00 kPa as above. In addition the 20 thou test is carried out at idle or with the vehicle moving at less then 9 mph. Component faults P0443, P0446, P0450 & P0455 cannot be determined from the 20 thou test.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 61 of 152



# **6.6.2 Monitoring Structure**

|                                       |        | Evaporativ  | e Emission Syste             | m Monitor – U                      | Jp to 2004 Model Year                                |  |                       |                   |
|---------------------------------------|--------|---|------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Component/                            | Fault  | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction                  | Threshold                          | Secondary  | Enable   | Time                  | MIL               |
| System                                | Codes  | Description   | Criteria                     | value                              | Parameter  | Conditions   | Required              |                   |
| EVAP canister                         | P0444  | Hardware check  | Commanded versus             | Wrong                              | Battery voltage                                      | > 6 volts  | 3.2s                  | 2 Drive           |
| purge valve low<br>voltage            |        |   | actual                       |                                    | EVAP canister purge valve duty cycle                 | < 0.102  |                       | Cycles            |
| EVAP canister                         | P0445  | Hardware check  | Commanded versus             | Wrong                              | Battery voltage                                      | > 6 volts  | 3.2s                  | 2 Drive           |
| purge valve<br>high voltage           | 1 0443 | i laidware check  | actual                       | vviolig                            | EVAP canister purge valve duty cycle                 |  | 5.23                  | Cycles            |
| EVAP canister                         | P0443  | Incorporated in to P0455/P0442  | Pressure change              | -2 kPa                             |  |  | 120s                  | 2 Drive           |
| purge valve<br>malfunction            |        |   | . recours change             |                                    | Disable:   | P0603, P1609,<br>P0441   |                       | Cycles            |
| EVAP canister close valve open        | P0447  | Hardware check  | Commanded versus actual      | Wrong                              | Ignition on  |  | 1.28s                 | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                                       | P0448  | Hardware check  | Commanded versus actual      | Wrong                              | Leak check active<br>Disable:                        | P0603, P1609   | 1.28s                 | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| EVAP canister close valve malfunction | P0446  | Incorporated in to P0455/P0442  | Pressure change/time         | < -0.4 kPa                         |  |  | 150s<br>approximately | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| FTP sensor malfunction                | P0450  | Incorporated in to P0455/P0442  | Sensor activity              | < -0.03 kPa                        |  |  | 120s<br>approximately | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Gross leak<br>detected                | P0455  | FTP during purge on, EVAP canister closure valve open and EVAP canister closure valve closed conditions | Pressure change over time    | Time/pressure                      | Altitude change<br>Vehicle speed<br>Time after start | > 625 ft<br>6.25 to 81mph<br>>765s   | 94s<br>approximately  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| 0.040" leak<br>detected               | P0442  | FTP during purge on, EVAP canister closure valve open and EVAP canister closure valve closed conditions | Pressure change over<br>time | See table TBDF_LEAK_FAL TLEVL_BASE | Purge accumulative                                   | 15 to 85%<br>< 10,000 ft<br>-8 to 100 °C<br>< 3%<br>2.5 to 40 g/s<br>70 to 110 °C<br>700<br>> -200 kPa | 70s<br>approximately  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 62 of 152



|                         | Evaporative Emission System Monitor – Up to 2004 Model Year |                                 |                           |   |                           |  |  |                   |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|---|---------------------------------|---------------------------|---|---------------------------|--|--|-------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/<br>System    | Fault<br>Codes  | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria   | Threshold value                           | Secondary<br>Parameter    | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required   | MIL               |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0.020" leak<br>detected |   | FTP during purge on, EVAP       | Pressure change over time | See table<br>TBDF_LEAK_FAT<br>LEVL_BASE20 | Vehicle speed             | < 9 mph > 1400s 30-85% < 10,000 ft -8 to 70 °C < 3% 1.5 to 15 g/s 70 to 110 °C 1100 > -1.25 kPa 9000s  Alternative entry conditions for 0.020" &0.040" > 1400s | 55s  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |  |
|                         |   |                                 |                           |   | Engine speed Purge amount | > 70g/s for ><br>3.5s<br>> 3500 RPM for  | n  |                   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                         |   |                                 |                           |   | Disable:                  | > 3.5s<br>> 450<br>P0101- P0103,<br>P0111- P0113,<br>P0128, P0201-   | P1104, P0107, P0116- P0118,                                      | P0125,            |  |  |  |  |  |
|                         |   |                                 |                           |   |                           | P0444, P0445,<br>P0453, P0460,<br>P1637, C1137,<br>P1314, P1316,<br>P1368, P1642,  | P0447, P0448,<br>P0603, P1609,<br>C1165, C1175,<br>P0106, P1637, | P0452,<br>P1642,  |  |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 63 of 152



|   |                | Evaporativ  | e Emission System         | Monitor –          | From 2004 Model Year  |  |                           |                   |
|---|----------------|---|---------------------------|--------------------|---|--|---------------------------|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System                        | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description  | Malfunction<br>Criteria   | Threshold value    | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Require<br>d      | MIL               |
| EVAP canister<br>purge valve low<br>voltage | P0444          | Hardware check  | Commanded v actual        | Wrong              | Battery voltage<br>EVAP canister purge valve duty<br>cycle  | < 10 volts<br>/< 0.05  | 3.2s                      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| EVAP canister purge valve high voltage      | P0445          | Hardware check  | Commanded v actual        |                    | Battery voltage EVAP canister purge valve duty cycle  | > 10 volts<br>/> 0.9<br>> 0.95 (2008)                                      | 3.2s                      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|   | P0443          | Incorporated into P0455/P0442   | Pressure change           | <= -1 kPa          | Disable:  | P1609  | 120s<br>approximat<br>ely | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| EVAP canister close valve open              | P0447          | Hardware check  | Commanded v actual        | Wrong              | Ignition on   |  | 1.3s                      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| EVAP canister close valve shorted           | P0448          | Hardware check  | Commanded v actual        | Wrong              | Leak check active<br>Disable:   | P0603, P1609   | 1.3s                      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| EVAP canister close valve malfunction       | P0446          | Incorporated into P0455/P0442   | Pressure change/time      | <= -0. 2 kPa       |   |  | 150s<br>approximat<br>ely | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| FTP sensor<br>malfunction                   | P0450          | Incorporated into P0455/P0442   | Sensor activity           | < -0.03 kPa        |   |  | 120s<br>approximat<br>ely | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Gross leak<br>detected                      | P0455          | FTP during purge on, EVAP canister closure valve open and EVAP canister closure valve closed conditions | Pressure change over time | Time/pressur<br>e  | Atmospheric pressure  | >= 70 kPa (XK8 and S-type) >= 74.5 kPa (XJ and X-Type) 6 to 81mph >=766s   | 94s<br>approximat<br>ely  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| 0.040" leak<br>detected                     | P0442          | FTP during purge on, EVAP canister closure valve open and EVAP canister closure valve closed conditions | Pressure change over time | See table<br>EVAP1 | Vehicle speed After start Fuel level Atmospheric pressure change Intake Air Temperature Fuel level change Airflow Engine Coolant Temperature Purge accumulative | 15 to 85%<br><= 2 kPa<br>-8 to 70°C<br>< 3%<br>2.5 to 40g/s<br>70 to 110°C | 70s<br>approximat<br>ely  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 64 of 152



|                         |                | Evaporativ  | e Emission System                                      | Monitor –  | From 2004 Model Year  |  |                              |                   |
|-------------------------|----------------|---|--|--|---|--|------------------------------|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System    | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description  | Malfunction<br>Criteria                                | Threshold value  | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Require<br>d         | MIL               |
|                         |                |   |  |  | FTP drop  | 700<br>>= -2 kPa   |                              |                   |
| 0.020" leak<br>detected |                | FTP during purge on, EVAP canister closure valve open and EVAP canister closure valve closed conditions | Pressure change over time                              | See table<br>EVAP 2  | Vehicle speed<br>After start<br>Fuel level<br>Atmospheric pressure  | 0 to 9 mph >= 1400s 30 to 85% >= 70 kPa (XK8 and S-type) >= 74.5 kPa (XJ and X-Type)             | 55s                          | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                         |                |   |  |  | Intake Air Temperature<br>Fuel level change   | -8 to 50 °C<br>-8 to 70 °C (Xk8)<br><= 3%  |                              |                   |
|                         |                |   |  |  | Airflow Engine Coolant Temperature Purge amount after start   | 1.5 to 15 g/s<br>70 to 110 °C<br>>= 1000 (X-Type)  |                              |                   |
|                         |                |   |  |  | FTP<br>Engine run time calculation  | >= 1100 (all other)<br>>= -1.25 kPa<br>>= 5000s (X-Type)<br>>= 9000s (S-Type)<br>>= 10000s (XK8) |                              |                   |
|                         |                |   |  |  | 0.020" and 0.040"<br>Idle   | >= 10000\$ (XK8)<br>>= 6000\$ (XJ N/A)<br>>= 5000\$ (XJ S/C)<br>> 1400\$                         |                              |                   |
|                         |                |   |  |  | Airflow<br>Engine speed<br>Purge amount   | > 70 g/s for > 3.5s<br>> 3500 RPM for > 3.5s<br>> 450  | 8                            |                   |
|                         |                |   | P0111, P0112, P0113, P011<br>P0202, P0203, P0204, P020 | 65, C1175, P0<br>6, P0117, P01<br>95, P0206, P02<br>88, P0452, P04 | .031, P0032, P0051, P0052, P01<br>118, P0125, P0128, P0131, P01<br>207, P0208, P0351, P0352, P03<br>153, P0460, P0506, P0507, P06 | 01, P0102, P0103, P0<br>32, P0133, P0151, P01<br>53, P0354, P0355, P03                           | 52, P0153, F<br>56, P0357, F | P0201,<br>P0358,  |
|                         |                |   | P0069, P2228, P2229.                                   | ,, i 1042, F10   | , 1 10 <del>1</del> 7   |  |                              |                   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 65 of 152



|                                  | Evaporative Emission System Monitor – 2008 Model Year   |                           |                    |  |   |                  |                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------|--------------------|--|---|------------------|-------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/ Fau<br>System Code    |   | Malfunction<br>Criteria   | Threshold value    | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions  | Time<br>Required | MIL               |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Fuel Evaporative Leak Monitoring |   |                           |                    |  |   |                  |                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Gross leak detected              | Fuel tank pressure during purge on, CCV open and CCV closed conditions  If the refuelled flag set then the diagnostic will still run as stated but this P0457 DTC is set and "Check Cap" message displayed if a fault is detected | Pressure change over time | time /<br>pressure | Atmospheric pressure Vehicle speed Afterstart  Refuelled Flag Fuel level Delta atmos. press. Intake Air Temperature Filtered Fuel Level Change Mass Airflow Engine Coolant Temperature Engine running time since ECT < 40 degC Accumulated purge amount  Fuel cut Atmospheric pressure - MAP  No of attempts to run monitor this drive cycle | > 74.5 kPa 6.2 <= V < 80.7 mph > 766 s  (Or Engine speed > 3500 rpm or MAF > 70 g/s for > 3.5 s) Not set 15 <= FL <= 85 % <= 2 kPa -8.125 <= IAT <= 70 degC <= 3 % during the test 1.5 <= MAF <= 50.0 g/s 70 <= ECT <= 110 degC <= 9000 s >= 700  (or >= 450, if Engine speed > 3500 rpm or MAF > 70 g/s for > 3.5 s) Not in progress >= 10 kPa (can be < 10 kPa for Up to 5.0 s) <= 20 | 50 s<br>(approx) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 66 of 152



|  |            | Evap  | orative Emiss             | sion Systen       | n Monitor – 2008 Model  | Year  |                  |                   |
|--|------------|---|---------------------------|-------------------|---|---|------------------|-------------------|
| Component/                             | Fault      | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction               | Threshold         | Secondary   | Enable  | Time             | MIL               |
| System                                 | Codes      | Description   | Criteria                  | value             | Parameter   | Conditions  | Required         |                   |
| Fuel Evaporative Monitoring (continued | <u>d</u> ) | Fuel tank pressure during   | Pressure change           | s – Toblo         | Atmosphoria proggura  | 74.5 kDo  | E9.0             | 2 Drive           |
| 0.040" leak detected                   | P0442      | Fuel tank pressure during purge on, CCV open and CCV closed conditions  If the refuelled flag set then the diagnostic will still run as stated but this P0457 DTC is set and "Check Cap" message displayed if a fault is detected | Pressure change over time | >= Table<br>EVAP1 | Atmospheric pressure Vehicle speed Afterstart  Refuelled Flag Fuel level Delta atmos. press. Intake Air Temperature Mass Airflow Engine Coolant Temperature Engine running time since ECT < 40 degC Rough road Accumulated purge amount | > 74.5 kPa 6.2 <= V < 80.7 mph > 766 s (Or Engine speed > 3500 rpm or MAF > 70 g/s for > 3.5 s) Not set 15 <= FL <= 85 % <= 2 kPa -8.125 <= IAT <= 70 degC 1.5 <= MAF <= 50.0 g/s 70 <= ECT <= 110 degC <= 9000 s  Not detected >= 700 (or >= 450, if Engine speed > 3500 | 58 s<br>(approx) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|  |            |   |                           |                   | Fuel cut Atmospheric pressure - MAP  Filtered Fuel Level Change Raw Fuel level change (slosh) Purge vapour concentration No of attempts to run monitor this drive cycle   | rpm or MAF > 70 g/s for > 3.5 s) Not in progress >= 10 kPa (can be < 10 kPa for Up to 5.0 s) <= 3 % during the test <= Table EVAP3 <= 0.5 <= 20   |                  |                   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 67 of 152



|  |                | Evap   | oorative Emiss            | sion Syster       | m Monitor – 2008 Model  | Year                 |                  |                   |
|--|----------------|--|---------------------------|-------------------|---|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System                   | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description  | Malfunction<br>Criteria   | Threshold value   | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions | Time<br>Required | MIL               |
| Fuel Evaporative Monitoring (continued | Leak           | Description  | Ciliena                   | value             | Falametei   | Conditions           | Required         |                   |
| 0.020" leak<br>detected                | P0456          | Fuel tank pressure during purge on, CCV open and CCV closed conditions | Pressure change over time | >= Table<br>EVAP2 | Vehicle speed Afterstart Fuel level Atmospheric pressure Intake Air Temperature Filtered Fuel Level Change Raw Fuel level change (slosh) Mass Airflow Engine Coolant Temperature Accumulated purge amount Tank pressure drop Engine running time since ECT < 40 degC Fuel cut Tank pressure Refuelled Flag (if set, then gross or 40 thou test must complete first) First pressure rise No of attempts to run monitor this drive cycle Gross Leak Test status | 0 <= V < 2.0 mph     | 66 s<br>(approx) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 68 of 152



|                          |            |       | T     | BDF_LEAK_        | FALTLEVL    | <b>BASE - 3.0</b>         | L            |       |       |       |
|--------------------------|------------|-------|-------|------------------|-------------|---------------------------|--------------|-------|-------|-------|
| Fuel level %             | 9          | 15    | 30    | 40               | 50          | 60                        | 70           | 80    | 85    | 91    |
| Threshold<br>level (kPa) | 0.55       | 0.55  | 0.563 | 0.599            | 0.63        | 0.672                     | 0.727        | 0.776 | 0.801 | 0.825 |
|                          |            |       | TE    | BDF LEAK I       | FALTLEVLE   | 3ASE20 - 3.               | 0L           |       |       |       |
| Fuel level %             | 19         | 30    | 40    | 45               | 50          | 55                        | 60           | 70    | 80    | 91    |
| Threshold<br>level (kPa) | 0.25       | 0.25  | 0.251 | 0.251            | 0.25        | 0.251                     | 0.251        | 0.27  | 0.288 | 0.318 |
|                          |            |       | T     | BDF LEAK         | FAI TI FVI  | BASE – 42                 | 1            |       |       |       |
| Fuel level %             | 9          | 15    | 30    | 40               | 50          | 60                        | 70           | 80    | 85    | 91    |
| Threshold<br>level (kPa) | 0.501      | 0.501 | 0.563 | 0.605            | 0.648       | 0.727                     | 0.813        | 0.886 | 0.929 | 0.971 |
|                          |            |       | Tr    | DE LEAK I        |             | A O F 00 4                | 01           |       |       |       |
| Fuel level %             | 19         | 30    | 40    | BDF_LEAK_I<br>45 | 50          | 5 <b>ASE2U - 4.</b><br>55 | <b>2L</b> 60 | 70    | 80    | 91    |
| Threshold level (kPa)    | 0.233      | 0.233 | 0.239 | 0.239            | 0.245       | 0.251                     | 0.257        | 0.263 | 0.300 | 0.300 |
|                          |            |       |       |                  |             |                           | 2/2          | •     |       |       |
| <b>5</b> 11 10/          |            |       |       | DF_LEAK_F        |             |                           |              | 1 00  | T 0-  |       |
| Fuel level %             | 9          | 15    | 30    | 40               | 50          | 60                        | 70           | 80    | 85    | 91    |
| Threshold<br>level (kPa) | 0.630      | 0.630 | 0.630 | 0.630            | 0.660       | 0.697                     | 0.752        | 0.819 | 0.949 | 0.898 |
|                          |            |       | TBD   | F LEAK FA        | LTLEVLBA    | SE20 – 4.2L               | S/C          |       |       |       |
| Fuel level %             | 19         | 30    | 40    | 45               | 50          | 55                        | 60           | 70    | 80    | 91    |
| Threshold<br>level (kPa) | 0.331      | 0.331 | 0.331 | 0.337            | 0.343       | 0.343                     | 0.343        | 0.349 | 0.361 | 0.361 |
|                          |            |       | F\    | VAP1 – V6 (      | X-Tyne 2004 | 1 Model Yes               | ar)          |       |       |       |
| Fuel level %             | 1          | 9 3   |       | 0 45             | 50          | 55                        | 60           | 70    | 80    | 91    |
| Threshold level          | I (kPa) 0. | 20 0. | 20 0. | 21 0.24          | 0.26        | 0.27                      | 0.28         | 0.31  | 0.33  | 0.34  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 69 of 152



|                       |       |       | EVA     | P1 (X-Type        | 2005 Mod   | el Year)    |       |          |       |          |
|-----------------------|-------|-------|---------|-------------------|------------|-------------|-------|----------|-------|----------|
| Fuel level %          | 19    | 30    | 40      | 45                | 50         | 55          | 60    | 70       | 80    | 91       |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.19  | 0.19  | 0.19    | 0.19              | 0.19       | 0.19        | 0.19  | 0.21     | 0.24  | 0.28     |
|                       |       |       |         |                   |            |             |       |          |       |          |
|                       |       |       |         |                   | ~ .        | lodel Year) |       | 1        |       | 1        |
| Fuel level %          | 19    | 30    | 40      | 45                | 50         | 55          | 60    | 70       | 80    | 91       |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.25  | 0.25  | 0.25    | 0.25              | 0.25       | 0.25        | 0.25  | 0.27     | 0.29  | 0.32     |
|                       |       |       | EVAD    | 4 42L ( V         | (J 2004 Mo | dal Vaar\   |       |          |       |          |
| Fuel level %          | 19    | 30    | 40      | 45                | 50         | 55          | 60    | 70       | 80    | 91       |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.25  | 0.25  | 0.27    | 0.28              | 0.29       | 0.29        | 0.30  | 0.33     | 0.39  | 0.45     |
|                       |       |       | _       |                   |            |             |       |          |       |          |
|                       |       |       | EVAP1   | – 4.2L ( X        | K8 2004 Mc | odel Year)  |       |          |       |          |
| Fuel level %          | 19    | 30    | 40      | 45                | 50         | 55          | 60    | 70       | 80    | 91       |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.20  | 0.20  | 0.20    | 0.20              | 0.20       | 0.21        | 0.22  | 0.24     | 0.26  | 0.26     |
|                       |       |       | EVAF    | P1 – (X Tvp       | e 2008 Mod | del Year)   |       |          |       |          |
| Fuel level %          | 9     | 15    | 30      | 40                | 50         | 60          | 70    | 80       | 85    | 91       |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.093 | 0.093 | 0.093   | 0.099             | 0.111      | 0.123       | 0.123 | 0.123    | 0.141 | 0.160    |
|                       |       |       | E\/4 D0 | \\0 / \\ <b>T</b> | 0004.14    | 1117        |       |          |       |          |
| E .1110/              |       | 4.5   |         |                   | /pe 2004 M |             | 70    |          | 0.5   |          |
| Fuel level %          | 9     | 15    | 30      | 40                | 50         | 60          | 70    | 80       | 85    | 91       |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.90  | 0.90  | 0.90    | 0.98              | 1.05       | 1.13        | 1.20  | 1.28     | 1.31  | 1.36     |
|                       |       |       | EVA     | P2 ( X-Tvpe       | 2005 Mod   | el Year)    |       |          |       |          |
| Fuel level %          | 9     | 15    | 30      | 40                | 50         | 60          | 70    | 80       | 85    | 91       |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.75  | 0.75  | 0.75    | 0.75              | 0.78       | 0.83        | 0.87  | 0.92     | 0.95  | 0.98     |
| ` '                   |       |       |         |                   | <u> </u>   | <u> </u>    |       | <u> </u> |       | <u> </u> |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 70 of 152



|                       | EVAP2 – 3.0L (S-Type 2004 Model Year) |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|
| Fuel level %          | 9                                     | 15   | 30   | 40   | 50   | 60   | 70   | 80   | 85   | 91   |  |  |  |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.55                                  | 0.55 | 0.56 | 0.60 | 0.63 | 0.67 | 0.73 | 0.78 | 0.80 | 0.82 |  |  |  |

|                       | EVAP2 – 4.2L (XK8 2004 Model Year) |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Fuel level %          | 10                                 | 20   | 30   | 40   | 50   | 55   | 60   | 70   | 80   | 91   |  |  |  |  |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.58                               | 0.58 | 0.60 | 0.60 | 0.67 | 0.70 | 0.74 | 0.78 | 0.90 | 1.04 |  |  |  |  |

|                       | EVAP2 – 4.2L (XJ 2004 Model Year) |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Fuel level %          | 9                                 | 15   | 30   | 40   | 50   | 60   | 70   | 80   | 85   | 91   |  |  |  |  |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.50                              | 0.50 | 0.52 | 0.61 | 0.68 | 0.78 | 0.91 | 1.05 | 1.10 | 1.11 |  |  |  |  |

|                       | EVAP2 – (X Type 2008 Model Year)          |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Fuel level %          | Fuel level % 9 15 30 40 50 60 70 80 85 91 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
| Threshold level (kPa) | 0.520                                     | 0.520 | 0.520 | 0.648 | 0.703 | 0.703 | 0.703 | 0.703 | 0.703 | 0.703 |  |  |  |  |

| EVAP3 – (X Type 2008 Model Year) |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|--|--|
| Fuel Level (%)                   | 15 | 20 | 30 | 45 | 55 | 70 | 80 | 85 |  |  |  |
| Fuel Slosh Threshold             | 40 | 40 | 18 | 15 | 15 | 14 | 11 | 10 |  |  |  |

| EVAP4 – (X Type 2008 Model Year) |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|--|--|--|
| Fuel Level (%)                   | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 80 | 90 |  |  |  |  |
| Fuel Slosh Threshold             | 30 | 20 | 12 | 7  | 7  | 9  | 13 | 15 |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 71 of 152



# **6.6.3 Drive Cycle Information**Evaporative emission system leak & DMTL module faults

Drive cycle under review.

**EVAP Canister Purge valve & Purge flow faults** 

Drive cycle under review.

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 72 of 152



#### 6.7 Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Circuit

# 6.7.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software.

If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

# 6.7.2 Range/Performance Failure

This monitor is covered in the EVAP loss recovery system monitor section.

# 6.7.3 Monitoring Structure

|                           | Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Monitor |                                       |                         |   |                        |                                    |                                      |                   |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|---|------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/<br>System      | Fault<br>Codes                    | Monitoring<br>Strategy<br>Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value                                 | Secondary<br>Parameter | Enable<br>Conditions               | Time<br>Required                     | MIL               |  |  |  |  |
| FTP sensor<br>low input   | P0452                             | Out of range check                    | Sensor voltage          | <= 0.10 volts                                   | Ignition on            |                                    | 5s<br>1.3s (2004 MY)<br>5s (2008 MY) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |
| FTP sensor<br>high input  | P0453                             | Out of range check                    | Sensor voltage          | >= 4.95 volts<br>>= 4.9 volts (2004 model year) | Ignition on            |                                    | 5s<br>1.3s (2004 MY)<br>5s (2008 MY) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |
|                           |                                   |                                       |                         |   | Disable:               | P0603, P1241, P124<br>P0562, P0563 | I<br>2, P1243, P1642, P16            | 1<br>609,         |  |  |  |  |
| FTP sensor<br>malfunction | P0450                             | Incorporated in to<br>P0455/P0442     | Sensor activity         | <= 0.03 kPa                                     |                        | See EVAP system                    |                                      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |

# 6.7.4 Drive Cycle Information

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 73 of 152



# 6.8 Exhaust Gas Recirculation System Monitor (V8 Engines)

### 6.8.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software.

If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

# 6.8.2 Exhaust Gas Recirculation Valve Range/Performance Failure

The method employed to check the EGR valve operation involves forcing the valve open and closed during an over run fuel cut off. A reading from the Manifold Absolute Pressure sensor is checked before, during and after the valve operation. The difference in values between the open and closed states of the valve is checked against a map of engine speed versus the difference value. If this calculated value is below or over the threshold, a failure is judged.

## 6.8.3 Monitoring Structure

|             | Exhaust Gas Recirculation System Monitor |                               |                         |                |                             |                      |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|--|-------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/  | Fault                                    | Monitoring Strategy           | Malfunction             | Threshold      | Secondary                   | Enable               | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |  |  |
| System      | Codes                                    | Description                   | Criteria                | value          | Parameter                   | Conditions           | Required |         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Flow        | P0400                                    | Rationality flow check versus | Inlet manifold pressure | See table EGR1 | Atmospheric pressure        | 67 kPa               | 2.4s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |  |
| malfunction |  | engine speed and atmospheric  |                         |                | Engine speed                | 1200 to 2500 RPM     |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  | pressure                      |                         |                | Airflow                     | 0.25 to 13 g/s       |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | Ambient temperature         | -30 to 100 °C        |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                |                             | -11.3 to 100 °C S/C  |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | Engine load                 | 0.1 to 0.4 g/rev     |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                |                             | 0.1 to 0.46g/rev S/C |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | Change in throttle position | < 12.5 deg/s         |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                |                             | <= 50 deg/s (04MY)   |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | Throttle Position           | <= 4.5 deg           |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | Engine Coolant Temperature  | 75 to 110 °C         |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | Catalyst monitor            | Not executing        |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | EVAP leak check             | Not executing        |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | EGR system                  | Not executing        |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |  |                               |                         |                | Over run fuel cut off       | Invoked.             |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 74 of 152



|                    | Exhaust Gas Recirculation System Monitor |                     |                          |                  |                             |                   |                          |          |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------|--|---------------------|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|----------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/         | Fault                                    | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction              | Threshold        | Secondary                   | Enable            | Time                     | MIL      |  |  |  |  |  |
| System             | Codes                                    | Description         | Criteria                 | value            | Parameter                   | Conditions        | Required                 |          |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |  |                     |                          | Disable:         | P0101-P0103, P0111-P0113,   | P0131-P0133, P015 | 51-P0153, P1313          | , P1314, |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |  |                     |                          |                  | P1316, P0171, P0172, P0174, | P0175, P0106 -P0  | 108, P0116- P01 <i>1</i> | 18,      |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |  |                     |                          |                  | P0125, P1367, P1368, P0351- | ,                 | , ,                      | ,        |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |  |                     |                          |                  | P0051, P0052, P0443-P0445,  |                   |                          |          |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |  |                     |                          |                  | P0603, P1609, P0441, P1224, | P1224, P1229, P0  | 128, C1165, C117         | 75,      |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |  |                     |                          |                  | C1137, C1145, C1155         |                   |                          |          |  |  |  |  |  |
| EGR valve          | P0405                                    | Out of range check  | Control signals voltages | Low level (I/O)  |                             | Ignition on       |                          | 2 Drive  |  |  |  |  |  |
| circuit low input  |  |                     |                          |                  |                             |                   |                          | Cycles   |  |  |  |  |  |
| EGR valve          | P0406                                    |                     | Control signals voltages | High level (I/O) |                             |                   |                          |          |  |  |  |  |  |
| circuit high input |  |                     |                          |                  |                             |                   |                          |          |  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |  |                     |                          |                  | Disable:                    | P1642, P0603, P16 | 609                      |          |  |  |  |  |  |

| EGR1                       |      |                               |     |   |     |     |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------|------|-------------------------------|-----|---|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|--|
| Atmospheric pressure (kPa) |      | Engine speed (RPM)            |     |   |     |     |  |  |  |  |  |
| pressure (kPa)             | 1500 | 1500 1700 1900 2100 2300 2500 |     |   |     |     |  |  |  |  |  |
| 68                         | 4.6  | 4.6                           | 4.4 | 4 | 3.6 | 3.5 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 76                         | 5.2  | 4.8                           | 4.6 | 4 | 4   | 3.6 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 95                         | 7    | 6.5                           | 6.3 | 6 | 5.3 | 5   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 101                        | 7    | 6.5                           | 6.3 | 6 | 5.3 | 5   |  |  |  |  |  |

**6.8.4 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 75 of 152



### 6.9 Crankshaft/Camshaft Position Sensor

## 6.9.1 Open and Short Circuit Detection of the Crank Signal

Checks are performed to see if normal crank edge signals are detected during cranking.

#### 6.9.2 Intermittent Crank Failure Detection

The number of crank teeth is checked every 360° of crank angle (1revolution).

## 6.9.3 Crank Request Signal High Input Monitor

If the crank request input is high when then the engine is running and the vehicle is moving, a high failure is flagged.

# 6.9.4 Open/Short Circuit

For open and short circuit detection, the monitor looks for:

- No CMP edge signal is input during cranking.
- No CMP edge signal is input during normal running.

# 6.9.5 Missing Phase Detection

For missing phase detection, the cylinder identification flag does not turn on or off every 360°.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 76 of 152



# 6.9.6 Monitoring Structure

|                                     |                | Crar   | kshaft Position S                     | ensors Monitor             | ing Operation  |  |                             |                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|--|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Component/<br>System                | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description                  | Malfunction<br>Criteria               | Threshold value            | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required            | MIL                            |
| CKP sensor malfunction              | P0335          | 1). Crank sensor signal when engine cranking     | Time to crank pulse                   | No pulse                   | Cranking<br>Battery voltage<br>Engine speed (RPM)                                      | Operation<br>6.5 to 16.0 volts<br>>= 600 (V8)<br>>= 650 (V6)                                 | 2.0s                        | 2 Drive<br>Cycles              |
|                                     |                | 2). Crank sensor during engine running           | Time to crank pulse                   | No pulse                   | Engine speed (RPM)   | >= 1000<br>>= 650 (X-Type)   | 0.1s                        | 2 Drive<br>Cycles              |
| CKP sensor<br>range/<br>performance | P0336          | Crank sensor pulses judged between missing teeth | Number of pulses                      | Incorrect number of pulses |  | >= 600 (V8)<br>>= 650 (V6)<br>< 0.077s (2008MY)<br>P1245, P1246, P1609,<br>P0341, P0512      | 1 revolution<br>P0616, P061 | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>7, P0340, |
| Crank request low input             |                | Starter relay on while crank request off         | Crank request signal<br>Starter relay | Off<br>On                  |  |  | 0.512s                      | 2 Drive<br>Cycles              |
| Crank request<br>high input         |                | Crank request active while vehicle moving        | Crank request signal                  | On                         | Vehicle speed (mph) Engine speed (RPM)   | >= 12 (X-Type)<br>>= 9 (all others)<br>1200 to 3000 (X-Type)<br>1500 to 4000 (all<br>others) | 5 times                     | 2 Drive<br>Cycles              |
|                                     |                |  |                                       | Disable:                   | Engine load<br>P0335, P0336, P0102, F<br>P0616, P0617, P1516, F<br>C1145, C1155, P0851 |  |                             |                                |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 77 of 152



|  |  |   | Camshaft Po        | sition Senso | ors   |  |               |                   |  |  |
|--|--|---|--------------------|--------------|---|--|---------------|-------------------|--|--|
| Component/   | Fault  | Monitoring Strategy                         | Malfunction        | Threshold    | Secondary   | Enable   | Time          | MIL               |  |  |
| System   | Codes  | Description                                 | Criteria           | value        | Parameter   | Conditions   | Required      | IVIIL             |  |  |
| CMP sensor<br>Bank A<br>malfunction<br>CMP sensor<br>Bank B<br>malfunction | P0340<br>P1340<br>P0345 (2004<br>model year) | CMP sensor at engine start                  |                    | No pulse     | Cranking Battery voltage  Crank signal pulse detected   | Operation >= 8.5 volts (X- Type) >= 6.5 volts (all others) >= 24 times |               | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
| manunction   |  | CMP sensor during engine running            | Time to CMP pulse  | No pulse     | Engine speed (RPM)  Battery voltage Engine speed (RPM)  | >= 600 (V8)<br>>= 650 (V6)<br>>= 10.5 volts<br>>= 600 (V8)             | 5s            | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
| CMP sensor   | P0341  | Detection of CMP sensor pulse between crank | Pulse not detected | No pulse     | 30 deg crank angle time<br>Engine speed (RPM)   | >= 650 (V6)<br>< 0.077s (2008MY)<br>>= 600 (V8)                        | 2 revolutions |                   |  |  |
| Bank A range/<br>performance   |  | missing teeth                               |                    |              | Missing camshaft position signal  | >= 650 (V6)<br>>= 2 times (X-Type)<br>>= 3 times (all<br>others)       |               | Cycles            |  |  |
|  |  |   |                    |              | Delay – reverse gear selected/deselected  | >= 5s  |               |                   |  |  |
| CMP sensor<br>Bank B range/  | P1341<br>P0346 (2004                         |   |                    |              | 30 deg crank angle time   | < 0.077s (2008MY)  | I             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
| performance  | model year)                                  |   |                    | Disable:     | P0335, P0336, P0512, P0605, P0606, P0610, P0616, P0617, P0641, P0651, P0666, P0701, P0702, P0705, P0706, P0709, P0710, P0711, P0715, P0720, P0725, P0729, P0730, P0731, P0732, P0733, P0734, P0735, P0740, P0741, P0743, P0750, P0753, P0755, P0758, P0760, P0763, P0765, P0768, P0770, P0773, , P0780, P0781, P0782, P0783, P0784, P0787, P0788, P0815, P0829, P1245, P1246, P1572, P1603, P1605, P1609, P1642, P1643, P1719, P1774, P1796, P1797, P1783, P1798, P1799 |  |               |                   |  |  |

**6.9.7 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 78 of 152



#### 6.10 Mass Airflow Sensor and Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor

The Mass Airflow sensor contains a hot wire resistance element that forms part of a Wheatstone bridge. Air flowing around the hot-wire cools it, so altering the value of its resistance. The consequent change in the voltage dropped across the resistance is compared with the voltage dropped by the other resistance arms of the Wheatstone bridge to determine the airflow. The Mass Airflow sensor is continually monitored by OBD routines. A DTC is recorded if the input signal from the sensor to the ECM is outside pre-defined thresholds at the high or low end of the scale.

# 6.10.1 High/Low Input Failure and Ground Monitor

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software. If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. For Mass Airflow sensor ground open monitoring, the voltage on the ground pin of the Mass Airflow sensor is monitored in the same way as described above.

# 6.10.2 Range/Performance Failure

The monitor operates continuously whilst the entry conditions are met. Every 0.128 seconds the airflow sensor monitor compares the actual airflow with an estimated airflow, which is calculated by a model. Similarly, every 0.032 seconds the Manifold Absolute Pressure sensor monitor compares the actual Manifold Absolute Pressure with an estimated pressure, which is calculated by a model. The models to calculate the estimated airflow and pressure have look-up tables that use engine speed, throttle angle and atmospheric pressure to derive base values and compensation values by which the estimated airflow and pressure are calculated.

Whether the Mass Airflow sensor and the Manifold Absolute Pressure sensor are behaving normally is determined if the difference between the actual and estimate values are below a calibrated threshold for more than 5 seconds. Whether the Mass Airflow sensor and the Manifold Absolute Pressure sensor are behaving abnormally, as failed components, is determined if the difference between the actual and estimated values is greater than a calibrated threshold for fifteen seconds continuously. The monitors have the ability to make a normal judgments followed by failed judgments or vice versa as the monitors run continuously whilst the entry conditions are met.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 79 of 152



# **6.10.3 Monitoring Structure**

|                           |                |  | Ма                              | ss Airflow Sens   | sor   |  |  |                          |
|---------------------------|----------------|--|---------------------------------|---|---|--|--|--------------------------|
| Component/<br>System      | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description                  | Malfunction<br>Criteria         | Threshold value   | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required   | MIL                      |
| MAF high<br>voltage       | P0103          | Out of range check                               | MAF voltage                     | > 4.9 volts   |   | Ignition on  | 0.5s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles        |
| MAF Low<br>voltage        | P0102          | Out of range check                               | MAF voltage                     | < 0.2 volts   |   | Ignition on  | 0.5s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles        |
| MAF ground<br>open        | P1104          | Out of range check                               | MAF ground voltage              | > 1.0 volts   |   | Ignition on  | 0.5s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles        |
| MAF range/<br>performance | P0101          | Rationality v Throttle Position and engine speed | Airflow actual versus estimated | See table MAF1 and<br>MAF2 (X-Type)<br>>= 20 g/s (S-type)<br>>= 25 g/.s (XJ)<br>>= 20 g/s (XK8) | Engine speed (RPM):  Engine Coolant Temperature:  | 1050 to 5100 (X-Type)<br>1500 to 2500 (S-Type)<br>1000 to 2000 (XJ an<br>XK8))<br>60 to 119 °C                                 | 15s  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles        |
|                           |                |  |                                 | 20 9/0 ((0)   |   | (X-Type)<br>70 to 110 °C (all<br>others)   |  |                          |
|                           |                |  |                                 |   | Intake Air Temperature:<br>Atmospheric Pressure:<br>Throttle Position:  | -30 to 100 °C<br>>= 68 kPa<br>6 to 45 deg (X-Type)<br>7 to 30 deg (S-Type)<br>7 to 20 deg (XJ an<br>XK8)                       |  |                          |
|                           |                |  |                                 |   | Fuel level:<br>TP change:   | >=10%<br><= 45 deg/s (X-Type)<br><= 44 deg/s (S-Type<br>and XK8)<br><= 25 deg/s (XJ)   |  |                          |
|                           |                |  | Disable:                        | P0341, P1340, P134<br>P1367, P1368, P020<br>P0113, P1241, P124<br>P1243, P0603, P164            | 6, P0131-P0133, P0151-P0153<br>1, P0335, P0336, P0106-P0108<br>1- P0208, P0031, P0032, P005<br>2, P0101- P0103, P1104, P001<br>6, P1647, P1107, P1108, P012<br>1, P1611, P1633, C1165, C117 | , P0171, P0172, P0174,<br>3, P0125, P0116- P0118<br>1, P0052, P0444, P0445<br>0, P0020, P1384, P1396<br>8, P1224, P1229, P0121 | , P0351-P035<br>5, P0443, P01<br>6, P1642, P16<br>-P0123, P022 | 88,<br>11-<br>37,<br>23, |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 80 of 152



|             | Mass Airflow Sensor – MAF1 (2.5L) MAF Upper Limit |                    |      |      |      |      |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|--------------------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Throttle    |   | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |      |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
| Angle (deg) | 1050  | 1540               | 2025 | 2550 | 3040 | 3560 | 4040  | 4570  | 5090  |  |  |  |  |
| 6           | 15.6  | 16.2               | 16.9 | 16.9 | 16.9 | 16.9 | 16.9  | 16.9  | 16.9  |  |  |  |  |
| 10          | 21.3  | 24.4               | 26.9 | 28.7 | 29.4 | 28.1 | 28.4  | 27.8  | 28.1  |  |  |  |  |
| 15          | 23.7  | 32.5               | 38.8 | 42.5 | 47.5 | 48.7 | 50.0  | 50.0  | 50.6  |  |  |  |  |
| 20          | 27.5  | 35.0               | 45.0 | 53.7 | 65.0 | 70.0 | 73.7  | 76.9  | 79.7  |  |  |  |  |
| 25          | 27.5  | 37.5               | 48.1 | 60.0 | 72.5 | 81.3 | 88.8  | 95.3  | 101.3 |  |  |  |  |
| 30          | 27.5  | 38.1               | 50.0 | 65.0 | 78.1 | 90.0 | 100.0 | 109.4 | 118.8 |  |  |  |  |
| 35          | 27.5  | 39.4               | 50.6 | 67.5 | 85.0 | 96.3 | 108.1 | 120.0 | 131.6 |  |  |  |  |
| 40          | 27.5  | 39.4               | 51.3 | 68.8 | 85.6 | 99.4 | 112.5 | 126.3 | 140.6 |  |  |  |  |
| 45          | 27.5  | 39.4               | 51.3 | 68.8 | 85.6 | 99.4 | 115.6 | 128.4 | 145.6 |  |  |  |  |

|             | Mass Airflow Sensor – MAF2 (2.5L) MAF Lower Limit |                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Throttle    |   | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| Angle (deg) | 1050  | 1540               | 2025 | 2550 | 3040 | 3560 | 4040 | 4570 | 5090 |  |  |  |  |
| 6           | 5.2   | 5.6                | 6.4  | 6.4  | 6.4  | 6.4  | 6.4  | 6.4  | 6.4  |  |  |  |  |
| 10          | 9.7   | 11.6               | 12.4 | 13.5 | 13.9 | 13.1 | 13.3 | 12.9 | 13.1 |  |  |  |  |
| 15          | 11.2  | 15.7               | 19.5 | 21.8 | 22.5 | 23.2 | 24.0 | 24.0 | 24.4 |  |  |  |  |
| 20          | 12.0  | 17.2               | 22.5 | 26.3 | 30.7 | 33.8 | 36.0 | 37.9 | 39.6 |  |  |  |  |
| 25          | 12.0  | 18.0               | 23.6 | 29.2 | 35.2 | 40.5 | 45.0 | 48.9 | 52.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 30          | 12.0  | 17.6               | 24.7 | 30.7 | 37.1 | 44.3 | 50.3 | 55.9 | 61.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 35          | 12.0  | 18.4               | 25.1 | 31.5 | 39.8 | 46.5 | 53.6 | 60.7 | 67.7 |  |  |  |  |
| 40          | 12.0  | 18.4               | 25.5 | 32.3 | 40.1 | 48.4 | 56.3 | 64.5 | 73.1 |  |  |  |  |
| 45          | 12.0  | 18.4               | 25.5 | 32.3 | 40.1 | 48.4 | 58.1 | 65.8 | 76.1 |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 81 of 152



|             | Mass Airflow Sensor – MAF1 (3.0L) MAF Upper Limit |                    |      |      |      |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|--------------------|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Throttle    |   | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
| Angle (deg) | 1050  | 1540               | 2025 | 2550 | 3040 | 3560  | 4040  | 4570  | 5090  |  |  |  |  |
| 6           | 16.2  | 16.9               | 17.5 | 17.5 | 17.5 | 17.5  | 17.5  | 17.5  | 17.5  |  |  |  |  |
| 10          | 23.7  | 26.3               | 27.5 | 28.7 | 28.7 | 28.7  | 28.7  | 28.7  | 28.7  |  |  |  |  |
| 15          | 27.5  | 35.6               | 41.2 | 44.4 | 48.7 | 50.0  | 51.3  | 51.3  | 51.3  |  |  |  |  |
| 20          | 30.0  | 40.0               | 50.0 | 58.8 | 67.5 | 71.3  | 73.7  | 76.3  | 78.7  |  |  |  |  |
| 25          | 31.3  | 43.8               | 55.0 | 67.5 | 80.0 | 86.2  | 93.8  | 100.0 | 105.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 30          | 31.3  | 45.0               | 57.5 | 72.5 | 88.8 | 98.7  | 108.8 | 118.0 | 127.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 35          | 31.3  | 45.6               | 60.0 | 76.3 | 93.1 | 106.3 | 118.8 | 133.8 | 145.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 40          | 31.3  | 46.3               | 60.0 | 78.7 | 96.3 | 111.2 | 126.3 | 143.8 | 158.8 |  |  |  |  |
| 45          | 31.3  | 46.3               | 60.6 | 79.4 | 98.7 | 115.0 | 132.5 | 150.0 | 166.2 |  |  |  |  |

| Mass Airflow Sensor – MAF2 (3.0L) MAF Lower Limit |      |      |      |      |                  |      |      |      |      |  |  |
|---|------|------|------|------|------------------|------|------|------|------|--|--|
| Throttle  |      |      |      | Eı   | ngine speed (RPI | M)   |      |      |      |  |  |
| Angle (deg)                                       | 1050 | 1540 | 2025 | 2550 | 3040             | 3560 | 4040 | 4570 | 5090 |  |  |
| 6   | 6.0  | 6.4  | 6.8  | 6.8  | 6.8              | 6.8  | 6.8  | 6.8  | 6.8  |  |  |
| 10  | 10.5 | 12.8 | 13.5 | 13.5 | 13.5             | 13.5 | 13.5 | 13.5 | 13.5 |  |  |
| 15  | 12.8 | 18.0 | 21.4 | 24.7 | 24.7             | 25.5 | 25.5 | 25.5 | 25.5 |  |  |
| 20  | 14.3 | 21.0 | 26.3 | 31.5 | 36.0             | 39.0 | 41.2 | 42.0 | 42.7 |  |  |
| 25  | 15.0 | 21.8 | 27.8 | 34.5 | 42.0             | 47.2 | 51.0 | 55.5 | 59.3 |  |  |
| 30  | 15.0 | 22.5 | 29.2 | 36.7 | 45.0             | 52.5 | 58.5 | 65.3 | 71.3 |  |  |
| 35  | 15.0 | 22.5 | 30.0 | 38.3 | 47.2             | 55.5 | 63.8 | 72.7 | 80.2 |  |  |
| 40  | 15.0 | 22.5 | 30.7 | 39.8 | 49.5             | 57.8 | 66.7 | 78.7 | 88.5 |  |  |
| 45  | 15.0 | 23.2 | 30.7 | 39.8 | 49.5             | 59.3 | 69.0 | 81.8 | 92.2 |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 82 of 152



|             | Mass Airflow Sensor – MAF1 (2008MY) MAF Upper Limit |       |       |       |                 |        |        |        |        |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|-------|-------|-------|-----------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--|--|--|--|
| Throttle    |   |       |       | Er    | ngine speed (RP | M)     |        |        |        |  |  |  |  |
| Angle (deg) | 1050  | 1540  | 2025  | 2550  | 3040            | 3560   | 4040   | 4570   | 5090   |  |  |  |  |
| 6           | 16.25   | 16.88 | 17.50 | 17.50 | 17.50           | 17.50  | 17.50  | 17.50  | 17.50  |  |  |  |  |
| 10          | 23.75   | 26.25 | 27.50 | 28.75 | 28.75           | 28.75  | 28.75  | 28.75  | 28.75  |  |  |  |  |
| 15          | 27.50   | 35.63 | 41.25 | 44.37 | 48.75           | 50.00  | 51.25  | 51.25  | 51.25  |  |  |  |  |
| 20          | 30.00   | 40.00 | 50.00 | 58.75 | 67.50           | 71.25  | 73.75  | 76.25  | 78.75  |  |  |  |  |
| 25          | 31.25   | 43.75 | 55.00 | 67.50 | 80.00           | 86.25  | 93.75  | 100.00 | 105.00 |  |  |  |  |
| 30          | 31.25   | 45.00 | 57.50 | 72.50 | 88.75           | 98.75  | 108.75 | 118.75 | 127.50 |  |  |  |  |
| 35          | 31.25   | 45.62 | 60.00 | 76.25 | 93.13           | 106.25 | 118.75 | 133.75 | 145.00 |  |  |  |  |
| 40          | 31.25   | 46.25 | 60.00 | 78.75 | 96.25           | 111.25 | 126.25 | 143.75 | 158.75 |  |  |  |  |
| 45          | 31.25   | 46.25 | 60.63 | 79.38 | 98.75           | 115.00 | 132.50 | 150.00 | 166.25 |  |  |  |  |

|             | Mass Airflow Sensor – MAF2 (2008MY) MAF Lower Limit |                    |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|--------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
| Throttle    |   | Engine speed (RPM) |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
| Angle (deg) | 1050  | 1540               | 2025  | 2550  | 3040  | 3560  | 4040  | 4570  | 5090  |  |  |  |
| 6           | 6.00  | 6.37               | 6.75  | 6.75  | 6.75  | 6.75  | 6.75  | 6.75  | 6.75  |  |  |  |
| 10          | 10.50   | 12.75              | 13.50 | 13.50 | 13.50 | 13.50 | 13.50 | 13.50 | 13.50 |  |  |  |
| 15          | 12.75   | 18.00              | 21.37 | 24.75 | 24.75 | 25.50 | 25.50 | 25.50 | 25.50 |  |  |  |
| 20          | 14.25   | 21.00              | 26.25 | 31.50 | 36.00 | 39.00 | 41.25 | 42.00 | 42.75 |  |  |  |
| 25          | 15.00   | 21.75              | 27.75 | 34.50 | 42.00 | 47.25 | 51.00 | 55.50 | 59.25 |  |  |  |
| 30          | 15.00   | 22.50              | 29.25 | 36.75 | 45.00 | 52.50 | 58.50 | 65.25 | 71.25 |  |  |  |
| 35          | 15.00   | 22.50              | 30.00 | 38.25 | 47.25 | 55.50 | 63.75 | 72.75 | 80.25 |  |  |  |
| 40          | 15.00   | 22.50              | 30.75 | 39.75 | 49.50 | 57.75 | 66.75 | 78.75 | 88.50 |  |  |  |
| 45          | 15.00   | 23.25              | 30.75 | 39.75 | 49.50 | 59.25 | 69.00 | 81.75 | 92.25 |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 83 of 152



|                    |       |                     | Manifold A                       | bsolute Pressu   | ire Sensor   |  |              |                   |
|--------------------|-------|---------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|--|--------------|-------------------|
| Component/         | Fault | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction                      | Threshold  | Secondary  | Enable   | Time         | MIL               |
| System             | Codes | Description         | Criteria                         | value  | Parameter  | Conditions   | Required     |                   |
| MAP high           | P1108 | Out of range check  | MAP voltage                      | > 4.9 volts  |  | Ignition on  | 0.5s         | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| MAP low            | P1107 | Out of range check  | MAP voltage                      | < 0.1 volts  |  | Ignition on  | 0.5s         | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| MAP<br>malfunction | P0105 | 1                   | Pressure actual versus estimated | See tables MAP1<br>and MAP2 (X-Type)<br>>= 20 kPa (all<br>others)) | Engine speed (RPM):  | 1050 to 4550 (X-<br>Type)<br>1500 to 2500 (S-<br>Type)<br>1000 to 2000 (XJ and<br>XK8) | 15s          | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | Engine Coolant Temperature:  | 70 to 110 °C<br>60 to 119 °C (X-<br>Type)  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | Intake Air Temperature:  | -30 to 100°C   |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | Atmospheric pressure:  | >= 68 kPa  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | Throttle Position:   | 7 to 20 deg<br>6 to 40 deg (X-Type)  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | Fuel level:  | >= 10%   |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | TP change:   | <= 44 deg/s  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | Variable camshaft timing advance   | <= 160 deg (X-Type   |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  |  | only)  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | and a sum of the sum o | <= 100% (X-Type  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | Manifold Absolute Pressure   | only)  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  |  | > 0 kPa (X-Type  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     | D: 11                            | Diala Bioli Biol   | •  | only)  | D0475 D00    |                   |
|                    |       |                     | Disable:                         |  | 6, P0131- P0133, P0151- P0153,   |  | , P0175, P03 | 40,               |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | .1, P0335, P0336, P0106- P0108,<br>51-P0358, P1367, P1368, P0201-  |  | D0051 D004   | 52                |
|                    |       |                     |                                  | •  | .3, P0111- P0113, P1241, P1242,  |  |              | •                 |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | 2, P1637, P1243 P0603, P1646,  |  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  |  | 2, P0223, P0222, P0121, P1251,   |  |              |                   |
|                    |       |                     |                                  | C1137,C1145, C115  | 5, P2118, P2119, P2135, P2228,   | P2229  |              |                   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 84 of 152



|                                 |                |  | Manifold Absolute F  | Pressure               | Sensor (2008MY)  |   |  |  |
|---------------------------------|----------------|--|--|------------------------|--|---|--|--|
| Component/<br>System            | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description  | Malfunction<br>Criteria  | Threshold value        | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions  | Time<br>Required   | MIL  |
| MAP high input<br>MAP low input | P0108          | Out of range check Out of range check                                      | MAP voltage (>= 200 kPa) MAP voltage (<= 10 kPa)   | >= 4.86 V<br><= 0.12 V | r didificiei   | Ignition on   | 0.5 s  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles  |
| MAP range / performance         |                | estimate based on TP & RPM with compensation for altitude and temperature. | Measured MAP deviation from estimate: Estimate - Measured Or Measured - Estimate Where: MapDiff = MaxDiff * 30 kPa  See table for setting of MaxDiff | ·                      | Engine Speed Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Atmospheric pressure Throttle Position Fuel level TP change  VVT advance Purge valve duty Manifold Absolute Pressure Vehicle speed  Fault Codes that disable MAF Monitoring | 1050 < N < 4550 rpm 60 < T < 119 degC -30 < IAT < 100 degC >= 68 kPa 6 < TP < 40 degrees >= 10 % <= 1.4 deg/0.032 s for at least 1.024 s <= 160 degCA <= 99.6 % >= 0 kPa 0 <= V <= 420 mph  P0300 P0301 P0303 P030 P0306 P1313 P1314 P131 P0133 P0152 P0151 P015 P0175 P0174 P0340 P034 P0335 P0336 P2229 P222 P0116 P0125 P0351 P035 P0354 P0356 P1367 P136 P0203 P0204 P0205 P020 P0051 P0052 P0444 P044 P0113 P0111 P0562 P056 P1104 P0101 P0010 P138 P0020 P1396 P0021 P002 P1642 P1243 P0603 P046 P0107 P0108 P0128 C003 P2119 P2118 P0122 P012 P2135 P1251 P1631 P060 | 6 P0132 P0<br>3 P0172 P0<br>1 P0345 P0<br>2 P0118 P0<br>3 P0355 P0<br>6 P0201 P0<br>6 P0031 P0<br>5 P0443 P0<br>6 P0011 P0<br>1 P0163 P1<br>6 P1646 P1<br>7 C003A P0<br>2 P0222 P0 | 131<br>171<br>346<br>117<br>352<br>202<br>032<br>112<br>103<br>012<br>638<br>647<br>0501 |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 85 of 152



|                | Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor – MAP1 (2.5L) MAP Estimate |                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------------|--|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Throttle Angle |  | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| (deg)          | 1050   | 1540               | 2025 | 2550 | 3040 | 3560 | 4040 | 4570 |  |  |  |  |
| 6              | 55.0   | 47.5               | 40.0 | 33.0 | 23.5 | 22.2 | 19.8 | 18.8 |  |  |  |  |
| 10             | 73.0   | 66.0               | 59.5 | 48.5 | 40.5 | 35.5 | 30.3 | 25.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 15             | 92.0   | 86.0               | 78.0 | 70.5 | 60.0 | 51.0 | 47.0 | 41.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 20             | 97.0   | 94.0               | 90.0 | 84.0 | 76.2 | 71.3 | 65.5 | 59.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 25             | 98.0   | 97.0               | 94.0 | 90.2 | 85.7 | 82.0 | 77.0 | 72.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 30             | 99.0   | 98.0               | 96.7 | 94.3 | 91.5 | 88.0 | 85.0 | 81.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 35             | 99.5   | 98.5               | 98.0 | 96.3 | 94.5 | 92.8 | 90.0 | 87.8 |  |  |  |  |
| 40             | 99.5   | 99.0               | 99.0 | 97.5 | 96.5 | 95.3 | 93.2 | 91.5 |  |  |  |  |

|                | Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor – MAP1 (3.0L) MAP Estimate |                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------------|--|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Throttle Angle |  | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| (deg)          | 1050   | 1540               | 2025 | 2550 | 3040 | 3560 | 4040 | 4570 |  |  |  |  |
| 6              | 55.0   | 42.0               | 35.0 | 24.0 | 19.5 | 18.0 | 17.0 | 14.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 10             | 72.0   | 61.0               | 50.0 | 40.0 | 32.0 | 31.0 | 26.5 | 20.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 15             | 90.5   | 82.5               | 72.5 | 62.0 | 50.0 | 48.0 | 41.0 | 34.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 20             | 95.0   | 90.5               | 85.5 | 78.5 | 68.0 | 65.0 | 58.5 | 51.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 25             | 97.0   | 94.5               | 91.5 | 87.5 | 79.5 | 76.5 | 70.5 | 64.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 30             | 98.0   | 96.5               | 94.5 | 92.0 | 87.0 | 84.5 | 79.5 | 75.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 35             | 98.5   | 97.5               | 96.5 | 94.5 | 91.5 | 89.5 | 86.5 | 83.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 40             | 98.5   | 98.0               | 97.5 | 96.5 | 94.0 | 92.5 | 90.0 | 88.5 |  |  |  |  |

|                          | Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor – MAP2 (2.5Land 3.0L) MAP Limit |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |
|--------------------------|---|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|
| Engine speed (RPM)       | 1050  | 1540 | 2025 | 2550 | 3040 | 3560 | 4040 | 4570 |  |  |  |
| Maximum difference (kPa) | 39  | 36   | 33   | 30   | 27   | 24   | 21   | 18   |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 86 of 152



|                | M    | anifold Absolu     | ite Pressure S | ensor – MAP1 | (2008MY) Esti | mate value (kf | Pa)  |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------------|------|--------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Throttle Angle |      | Engine speed (RPM) |                |              |               |                |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| (deg)          | 1050 | 1540               | 2025           | 2550         | 3040          | 3560           | 4040 | 4570 |  |  |  |  |
| 6              | 55.0 | 42.0               | 35.0           | 24.0         | 19.5          | 18.0           | 17.0 | 14.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 10             | 72.0 | 61.0               | 50.0           | 40.0         | 32.0          | 31.0           | 26.5 | 20.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 15             | 90.5 | 82.5               | 72.5           | 62.0         | 50.0          | 48.0           | 41.0 | 34.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 20             | 95.0 | 90.5               | 85.5           | 78.5         | 68.0          | 65.0           | 58.5 | 51.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 25             | 97.0 | 94.5               | 91.5           | 87.5         | 79.5          | 76.5           | 70.5 | 64.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 30             | 98.0 | 96.5               | 94.5           | 92.0         | 87.0          | 84.5           | 79.5 | 75.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 35             | 98.5 | 97.5               | 96.5           | 94.5         | 91.5          | 89.5           | 86.5 | 83.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 40             | 98.5 | 98.0               | 97.5           | 96.5         | 94.0          | 92.5           | 90.0 | 88.5 |  |  |  |  |

|             | Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor – MAP2 (2008MY) Fault limit (MaxDiff) |                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Camshaft    |   | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |  |
| Advance     | 1050  | 1540               | 2025 | 2550 | 3040 | 3560 | 4040 | 4570 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Angle (deg) |   |                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0.0         | 1.3   | 1.2                | 1.1  | 1.0  | 0.9  | 0.8  | 0.7  | 0.6  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4.0         | 1.3   | 1.2                | 1.1  | 1.0  | 0.9  | 0.8  | 0.7  | 0.6  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8.0         | 1.3   | 1.2                | 1.1  | 1.0  | 0.9  | 0.8  | 0.7  | 0.6  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12.0        | 1.3   | 1.2                | 1.1  | 1.0  | 0.9  | 0.8  | 0.7  | 0.6  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 16.0        | 1.3   | 1.2                | 1.1  | 1.0  | 0.9  | 0.8  | 0.7  | 0.6  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 20.0        | 1.3   | 1.2                | 1.1  | 1.0  | 0.9  | 0.8  | 0.7  | 0.6  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 24.0        | 1.3   | 1.2                | 1.1  | 1.0  | 0.9  | 0.8  | 0.7  | 0.6  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 30.0        | 1.3   | 1.2                | 1.1  | 1.0  | 0.9  | 0.8  | 0.7  | 0.6  |  |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 87 of 152



|                | Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor – MAP3 (2008MY) Altitude correction (AltitudeDifComp) |                    |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
|----------------|---|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Throttle Angle |   | Engine speed (RPM) |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |
| (deg)          | 1050  | 1540               | 2025 | 2550 | 3040 | 3560 | 4040 | 4570 |  |  |  |  |
| 6              | 55.0  | 42.0               | 35.0 | 24.0 | 19.5 | 18.0 | 17.0 | 14.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 10             | 72.0  | 61.0               | 50.0 | 40.0 | 32.0 | 31.0 | 26.5 | 20.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 15             | 90.5  | 82.5               | 72.5 | 62.0 | 50.0 | 48.0 | 41.0 | 34.5 |  |  |  |  |
| 20             | 95.0  | 90.5               | 85.5 | 78.5 | 68.0 | 65.0 | 58.5 | 51.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 25             | 97.0  | 94.5               | 91.5 | 87.5 | 79.5 | 76.5 | 70.5 | 64.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 30             | 98.0  | 96.5               | 94.5 | 92.0 | 87.0 | 84.5 | 79.5 | 75.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 35             | 98.5  | 97.5               | 96.5 | 94.5 | 91.5 | 89.5 | 86.5 | 83.0 |  |  |  |  |
| 40             | 98.5  | 98.0               | 97.5 | 96.5 | 94.0 | 92.5 | 90.0 | 88.5 |  |  |  |  |

| Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor – MAP4 (2008MY) Atmospheric pressure correction (AtmoPComp) |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Atmospheric Pressure (kPa)  | 60    | 70    | 80    | 90    | 100   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Correction Factor   | 1.203 | 0.898 | 0.602 | 0.297 | 0.000 |  |  |  |  |  |

| Manifold Abso                 | lute Pr | essure | Sensor | r – MAF | 25 (2008 | BMY) In | let air te | empera | ture co | rrectio | n (InAir | TComp | )  |     |
|-------------------------------|---------|--------|--------|---------|----------|---------|------------|--------|---------|---------|----------|-------|----|-----|
| Inlet Air Temperature (deg C) | -30     | -20    | -10    | 0       | 10       | 20      | 30         | 40     | 50      | 60      | 70       | 80    | 90 | 100 |
| Correction Factor             | 1       | 1      | 1      | 1       | 1        | 1       | 1          | 1      | 1       | 1       | 1        | 1     | 1  | 1   |

**6.10.4 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 88 of 152



#### 6.11 Barometric Pressure Sensor

The barometric pressure (BARO) sensor (also referred to as the high altitude compensation sensor) is located within the ECM.

# 6.11.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software. If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

# 6.11.2 Range/Performance Failure

The signal from the sensor is compared to the signal from the Manifold Absolute Pressure sensor at ignition on only. During this time the pressure within the inlet manifold should be at atmospheric, and therefore should match the value from the barometric pressure sensor.

The following conditions must be met first before the monitor can execute:

- Engine speed = 0
- Vehicle speed = 0
- Monitor is not inhibited
- Ignition is on
- Engine is not cranking
- Battery voltage exceeds the minimum threshold
- Engine Coolant Temperature above minimum threshold
- Atmospheric pressure within limits
- Inlet manifold pressure value has settled

If the absolute value of the difference between the signal from the barometric pressure sensor and the Manifold Absolute Pressure sensor differ by more than a defined amount, then a timer is executed. If the timer exceeds a calibrated amount, a temperature failure is judged. Providing there is no failure of the Manifold Absolute Pressure sensor, a DTC is then stored.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 89 of 152



# **6.11.3 Monitoring Structure**

|  |  |  | i i ooodai o c  | Sensor   |  |  |                                  |
|--|--|--|---|--|--|--|----------------------------------|
| Fault<br>Codes                         | Monitoring<br>Strategy<br>Description  | Malfunction<br>Criteria  | Threshold value   | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required                             | MIL                              |
| P0107<br>8 (X-Type 2005<br>nodel year) | Out of range check   | Sensor voltage   | <= 0.1 volts  |  | Ignition on  | 0.5s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles                |
| P0108<br>9 (X-Type 2005<br>nodel year) | Out of range check   | Sensor voltage   | >= 4.9 volts  |  | Ignition on  | 0.5s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles                |
|  | Comparison with MAP sensor signal and barometric pressure signal                       |  |   | P0108, P0111, P0112, P0113, P0116<br>P0125, P0128, P0222, P0223, P0335<br>P1104, P1107, P1108, P1224, P1229  | 6, P0117, P0118, F<br>5, P0336, P0460, F<br>9, P1245, P1246, F | P0121, P0122<br>P0603, P0616<br>P1251, P1609 | , P0123,<br>, P0617,<br>, P1611, |
| n                                      | P0107 8 (X-Type 2005 lodel year) P0108 9 (X-Type 2005 lodel year) P0106 9 (X-Type 2005 | Codes  P0107  3 (X-Type 2005) Odel year) P0108 Out of range check | Codes  Potor Potor Strategy Description  Potor Strategy Description  Criteria  Sensor voltage  Sensor voltage  Sensor voltage  Sensor voltage  Sensor voltage  Comparison with MAP Sensor voltage  Sensor voltage | Codes  P0107 3 (X-Type 2005) R0del year) P0108 R (X-Type 2005) R0del year) P0106 R (X-Type 2005) R0del year) R0del year) P0106 R (X-Type 2005) R0del year) R0d | Codes    Codes   | Codes  | Codes                            |

# **6.11.4 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 90 of 152



# 6.12 Intake Air Temperature Sensor

The Intake Air Temperature sensor is a thermistor device mounted inside the Mass Airflow sensor. It provides an input signal to the ECM proportional to the temperature of air passing through the inlet duct into the engine. A DTC is recorded if the voltage input signal from the sensor to the ECM is outside pre-defined thresholds at the high or low end of the scale.

## 6.12.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software. If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

# 6.12.2 Range/Performance Check 1

If engine speed and intake airflow is sufficient, the Engine Coolant Temperature is low enough and the air temperature sensor voltage is lower than calibrated constants, then a monitoring failure judgment is made.

If after a calibrated period has elapsed the voltage from the sensor is greater than a calibration constant then a monitoring normal judgment is made.

## 6.12.3 Range/Performance Check 2

At intervals of approximately 2 seconds, the Intake Air Temperature is sampled to monitor for rapid drop in air temperature. If the change in Intake Air Temperature (over a 6 second period) is greater than a calibration constant then a monitoring failure judgment will be made. A normal judgment is made if the change in Intake Air Temperature change is less than this calibrated value.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 91 of 152



# **6.12.4 Monitoring Structure**

|                           |                |                                 | Intake Air Ter                  | nperature Sens                                       | sor  |                                 |                  |                   |
|---------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|---------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System      | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria         | Threshold value                                      | Secondary<br>Parameter                               | Enable<br>Conditions            | Time<br>Required | MIL               |
| IAT high input            | P0113          | Out of range check              | Sensor voltage                  | <= 0.1 volts   |  | Ignition on                     | 0.5s             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| IAT low input             | P0112          | Out of range check              | Sensor voltage                  | >= 4.9 volts   |  | Ignition on                     | 0.5s             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| IAT range/<br>performance | P0111          | 1 - Rationality versus run time | Sensor voltage                  | <=- 0.3 volts<br>(> 100°C)                           | Engine speed Mass Airflow Engine Coolant Temperature | > 1000 RPM<br>> 5 g/s<br>< 40°C | 17.5s            | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                           |                | 2 – Two sided other check       | Sensor voltage change/2 seconds | >= 20°C (X-Type)<br>>= 45°C (V8)<br>>= 35°C (S-Type) |  | Ignition on                     | 6s               |                   |
|                           |                |                                 |                                 | (- ) /   |  | P0101, P0102,                   |                  |                   |
|                           |                |                                 |                                 |  |  | P0116, P0117,                   |                  |                   |
|                           |                |                                 |                                 |  |  | P0335, P0336,<br>P1104, P1241,  |                  |                   |
|                           |                |                                 |                                 |  |  |                                 |                  |                   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 92 of 152



|                          |       |                                       | Intake Air Temp                     | erature Se       | nsor (2008MY)                              |                           |             |         |
|--------------------------|-------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|--|---------------------------|-------------|---------|
| Component/               | Fault | Monitoring Strategy                   | Malfunction                         | Threshold        | Secondary                                  | Enable                    | Time        | MIL     |
| System                   | Codes | Description                           | Criteria                            | value            | Parameter                                  | Conditions                | Required    |         |
| IATS low input           | P0112 | Out of range check                    | IAT voltage (>= 4.86 V)             | <= -40 degC      | Ignition                                   | On                        | 0.512 s     | 2 Drive |
| IATS high input          | P0113 | Out of range check                    | IAT voltage (<= 0.12 V)             | >= 119.4<br>degC |  |                           |             | Cycles  |
| IATS range /             | P0111 | Range Performance                     | IAT Signal                          | <= 0.33 V        | Engine speed                               | >= 1000 rpm               | 17.5 s      | 2 Drive |
| performance              |       | IAT stuck high                        |                                     | (>= 100          | Mass Airflow                               | >= 5 g/s                  |             | Cycles  |
|                          |       |                                       |                                     | degC)            | Engine Coolant Temperature                 | <= 40 degC                |             |         |
|                          |       |                                       |                                     |                  | Time after start                           | >= 1.28 s                 |             |         |
| IATC rongo /             | P0111 | Range Performance                     | IAT(i - 3) - IAT(i)                 | > 40 degC        | Battery voltage                            | >= 10.0 V                 |             | 2 Drive |
| IATS range / performance |       | Readings taken every                  | <u>And</u>                          |                  | Engine Start                               | Not in progress           |             | Cycles  |
| periormance              |       | 2 seconds and compared                | IAT(i - 4) - IAT(i-1)<br><b>And</b> | > 40 degC        | Ignition turned on                         | Not in last 2.0 s         |             |         |
|                          |       | (unexpected step<br>change in Signal) | IAT(i - <del>5) - I</del> AT(i-3)   | > 40 degC        |  |                           |             |         |
| IATS range /             | P0111 | Rationality versus                    | Average_IAT - (average_ECT          | > 20 degC        | Engine Stall Condition                     | Not set                   | Dependent   | 2 Drive |
| performance              |       | ECT and Engine oil                    | + average_EOT)/2                    |                  | Block Heater                               | Not detected              | upon        | Cycles  |
|                          |       | temperature                           | <u>Or</u>                           |                  | Time after start                           | 120 <= time <= 200 s      | drive cycle |         |
|                          |       |                                       | (average_ECT+ average_EOT)/2        | > 20 degC        | 5  | 28800 <= time <= 655000 s |             |         |
|                          |       |                                       | - Average_IAT                       |                  | Difference between Engine                  | <= <mark>10</mark> degC   |             |         |
|                          |       |                                       |                                     |                  | Coolant Temperature average                |                           |             |         |
|                          |       |                                       |                                     |                  | and Oil temperature average at ignition on |                           |             |         |

**6.12.5 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 93 of 152



# 6.13 Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Monitor (V8 Supercharged Only)

### 6.13.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software.

If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

# 6.13.2 Range/Performance Check 1

If engine speed and intake airflow is sufficient, the Engine Coolant Temperature is low enough and the air temperature sensor voltage is lower than calibrated constants, then a monitoring failure judgment is made.

If after a calibrated period has elapsed the voltage from the sensor is greater than a calibration constant then a monitoring normal judgment is made.

## 6.13.3 Range/Performance Check 2

At intervals of approximately 2 seconds, the Intake Air Temperature is sampled to monitor for rapid drop in air temperature. If the change in Intake Air Temperature (over a 6 second period) is greater than a calibration constant then a monitoring failure judgment will be made. A normal judgment is made if the change in Intake Air Temperature change is less than this calibrated value.

## 6.13.4 Range/Performance Check 3

The monitor examines the integrity of IAT 2 sensor, by comparing it with the temperature signal from IAT 1 sensor, during the initial engine start up period (first 60 sec). The monitor will only execute after a cold start has been detected and appropriate cold soak flag has been set. The cold soak flag is set when the absolute of value (IAT – ECT < 10 °C), and a cold start has been initiated. Once a cold start has been identified and the monitor entry conditions are satisfied, the monitor proceeds to compare the two sensor readings. If the absolute value of IAT 2 – IAT 1 is less than the threshold then a normal counter is incremented, and upon exceeding a calibrated threshold, a normal judgment is set. If the absolute value is greater than the threshold, then a failure counter is incremented, and upon exceeding a calibrated threshold of the counter, a failure judgment is set.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 94 of 152



# **6.13.5 Monitoring Structure**

|                             |                | Intake Ai                       | ir Temperature 2 Se            | ensor (4.2L                | Supercharged Only)   |   |  |                   |
|-----------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|--|---|--|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System        | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria        | Threshold value            | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions  | Time<br>Required   | MIL               |
| IAT 2 low input             | P0097          | Out of range check              | IAT 2 voltage                  | < 0.1 volts                |  | Ignition on   | 0.5s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| IAT 2 high input            | P0098          | Out of range check              | IAT 2 voltage                  | > 4.9 volts                |  | Ignition on   | 0.5s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| IAT 2 range/<br>performance | P0096          | 1 – Rationality versus run time | IAT 2 voltage                  | <= 0.3 volts<br>(>= 100°C) | Engine speed<br>Airflow<br>Engine Coolant Temperature  | >= 1000 RPM<br>>= 5 g/s<br><= 40°C  | 18s<br>0.5s (2004<br>model year)                                     | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                             |                | 2 – Two sided other check       | IAT 2 voltage change/2 seconds | >= -45°C                   | Intake Air Temperature   | Ignition on <= 40°C   | 6s   |                   |
|                             |                | 3 – Comparison check            | IAT 2 versus IAT 1             | >= 35°C                    | Engine Coolant Temperature Engine soak judged ECT – IAT 1 Manifold pressure Engine after start count | <= 40°C<br><= 10°C<br><= 70 kPa (2003<br>model year only)<br><= 60s   |  |                   |
|                             |                |                                 |                                |                            | Disable:   | P0097, P0098, P010<br>P0105, P0111, P012<br>P0117, P0118, P012<br>P0336, P0603, P110<br>P1240-P1242, P124<br>P1474, P1642, P160 | 12, P0113, P01<br>25, P0128, P03<br>04, P1107, P11<br>3, P1245, P124 | 16,<br>35,<br>08, |

**6.13.6 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 95 of 152



# 6.14 Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor

The sensor is a thermistor, a solid-state variable resistor that changes resistance in response to a rise or fall in temperature. It is mounted in the engine block coolant system. The sensor is supplied with a reference voltage through a fixed resistor. As the current passes through the thermistor resistance, the ECM measures the voltage drop across the fixed resistor and translates this into a temperature using a pre-programmed table of values.

# 6.14.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software.

If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

# 6.14.2 Range/Performance Failure

There are two parts to the range/performance monitor. The first part ensures that the Engine Coolant Temperature reaches the level required for closed loop fuelling. The second part ensures that the Engine Coolant Temperature reaches 80°C. Both parts of the monitor operate with the same strategy, are one shot monitors and each part has its own calibration values. If the Engine Coolant Temperature and intake air temperature are above the required level for each monitor part then the following strategy will be carried out otherwise the counters for that monitor part are reset.

There are two counters associated with each monitor - the load conditions met counter increments when the engine speed and load are above the required level - the load conditions not met counter increments when any of those conditions is not met.

A normal judgment is made if the Engine Coolant Temperature reaches the required level before the load conditions met counter reaches the value held in the judgment table.

A failure judgment is made if the load conditions met counter reaches the value held in the judgment table and the Engine Coolant Temperature has not yet reached the required level.

The judgment table holds the values that the load conditions met counter must reach, mapped against minimum Engine Coolant Temperature (and minimum intake air temperature for the range/performance monitor), for a failure judgment to be made.

The load conditions not met counter has a value associated with it which if exceeded will reset both the load conditions met counter and the load conditions not met counter.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 96 of 152



# **6.14.3 Monitoring Structure**

|                           |       |  | Engine Co                 | olant Temp        | erature Sensor   |  |                   |                   |
|---------------------------|-------|--|---------------------------|-------------------|--|--|-------------------|-------------------|
| Component/                | Fault | Monitoring Strategy                                      | Malfunction               | Threshold         | Secondary  | Enable   | Time              | MIL               |
| System                    | Codes | Description  | Criteria                  | value             | Parameter  | Conditions   | Required          |                   |
| ECT high input            | P0118 | Out of range check                                       | ECT voltage               | <= 0.14 volts     |  | Ignition on  | 0.5s              | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| ECT low input             | P0117 | Out of range check                                       | ECT voltage               | >= 4.86 volts     |  | Ignition on  | 0.5s              | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| ECT range/<br>performance | P0116 | 1) Time for ECT to reach 80 °C check                     | ECT/time                  | See table<br>ECT1 | Engine speed (RPM) Engine load   | >=1600 (X-Type) >=1400 (V8) >=1500 (S-Type) > 0.4 g/revolutions (X-Type) > 0.5 g/revolutions (XK8) > 0.6 g/revolutions (XK8) * If these conditions are not met for > 1100s | See table<br>ECT1 | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                           | P0116 | 2) – Two sided other check                               | ECT voltage<br>change/ 2s | > - 20 °C         | Engine Coolant Temperature<br>Intake Air Temperature   | then the monitor is reset15 to 80 °C >= - 15 °C Ignition on  | 6 s               | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                           | P0125 | Time to closed loop fuelling enable temperature (-15 °C) | ECT/time                  | See table<br>ECT2 | Engine speed (RPM) Engine load  ECT  | > 500 * > 0.2 g/revolutions * * If these conditions are not met for >300s (>60s 2008MY) then the monitor is reset40 to -15 °C  | See table<br>ECT2 | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                           |       |  |                           | Disable:          | Intake Air Temperature<br>P0031, P0032, P0051, P0052, I<br>P0117, P0118, P0201, P0202, I<br>P0352, P0353, P0354, P0355, I<br>P1242, P1243, P1367, P1368, I | P0203, P0204, P0205, P0206, P0356, P0357, P0358, P0562,  | P0207, P0208      | B, P0351,         |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 97 of 152



|             |       | En                        | ngine Coolant Temperatu   | re Sensor | (P0116 – 2008MY)                      |                           |          |         |
|-------------|-------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------|---------|
| Component/  | Fault | Monitoring Strategy       | Malfunction               | Threshold | Secondary                             | Enable                    | Time     | MIL     |
| System      | Codes | Description               | Criteria                  | value     | Parameter                             | Conditions                | Required |         |
| ECT range / | P0116 | Coolant temperature       | ECT signal Voltage        | < ECT3    | Time after engine start               | < 3.584 s                 | 1.02 s   | 2 Drive |
| performance |       | biased high               |                           |           | Engine Oil Temperature                | -15 < EOT < 40 degC       |          | Cycles  |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Fuel Rail Temperature                 | -15 < FRT < 40 degC       |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Intake Air Temperature                | -15 < IAT < 40 degC       |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Oil temperature at ignition off -     | > 40 degC                 |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | current oil temperature               |                           |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Difference between oil                | < 10 degC                 |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | temperature and Intake Air            |                           |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Temperature                           | 40.1.0                    |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Difference between oil                | < 10 degC                 |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | temperature and Fuel rail temperature |                           |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Difference between Fuel rail          | < 10 degC                 |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | temperature and IAT                   | 10 dege                   |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Oil temperature at ignition off       | < 100 degC                |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | On temperature at ignition on         | 100 dogo                  |          |         |
| ECT range / | P0116 | Range Performance         | ECT(i - 3) - ECT (i)      | > 20 degC | Battery voltage                       | >= 10.0 V                 |          | 2 Drive |
| performance |       | Readings taken every 2    | And                       | J         | Engine Start                          | Not in progress           |          | Cycles  |
|             |       | seconds and compared      | ECT(i - 4) - ECT(i-1)     | > 20 degC | Ignition turned on                    | Not in last 2.0 s         |          |         |
|             |       | (unexpected step change   | <u>And</u>                |           | _                                     |                           |          |         |
|             |       | in Signal)                | ECT(i - 5) - ECT(i-3)     | > 20 degC |                                       |                           |          |         |
|             |       |                           | , , , , ,                 |           |                                       |                           |          |         |
| ECT range / | P0116 | Time for the coolant to   | ECT                       | < 80 degC | Time to closed loop or ECT            | Not set                   | ECT1     | 2 Drive |
| performance |       | reach 80 degC             | <u>And</u>                |           | biased high faults                    |                           |          | Cycles  |
|             |       | (i.e. Coolant temperature | Entry conditions true for | >= Table  | Engine Coolant Temperature            | >= -15 degC               |          |         |
|             |       | biased low)               |                           | ECT1      | Intake Air Temperature                | >= -15 degC               |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Engine Speed                          | >= <mark>1200</mark> rpm* |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           | Engine load                           | >= 0.4 g/rev*             |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           |                                       | *If these conditions      |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           |                                       | are not met for >=        |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           |                                       | 1100 s, then the          |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           |           |                                       | monitor is reset          |          |         |
|             |       |                           |                           | <u> </u>  |                                       | <u> </u>                  |          |         |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 98 of 152



|                            | Enç  | gine Cool | ant Tem | perature | Sensor F | Range Pe | rformand | ce (4.2L) | - ECT1 |     |     |     |
|----------------------------|------|-----------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|--------|-----|-----|-----|
| Start ECT (°C)             | -15  | -10       | 0       | 10       | 20       | 30       | 40       | 50        | 60     | 70  | 80  | 90  |
| Failure time counter (sec) | 1350 | 1350      | 1200    | 1050     | 1000     | 950      | 800      | 700       | 700    | 400 | 400 | 400 |

| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Range Performance (3.0L) – ECT1 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|---|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Start ECT (°C)  | -30  | -15  | -5   | 5    | 15   | 25   | 35   | 45   | 55   | 65   | 75   | 80   |
| Failure time counter (sec)  | 3212 | 2888 | 2658 | 2418 | 2325 | 2107 | 2157 | 1658 | 1492 | 1380 | 1380 | 1380 |

|               | <b>Engine Coola</b> | nt Temperatur | e Sensor Ran | ge Performano | e (X-Type Fro | m 2004 Model | Year) – ECT1 |     |
|---------------|---------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|-----|
|               |                     |               |              | Start E       | CT (°C)       |              |              |     |
| Min. IAT (°C) | -15                 | 0             | 15           | 30            | 45            | 55           | 65           | 75  |
| -15           | 2165                | 2045          | 1930         | 1765          | 1525          | 1285         | 930          | 365 |
| 0             | 2165                | 1310          | 1190         | 1065          | 885           | 715          | 505          | 185 |
| 15            | 2165                | 1310          | 880          | 755           | 620           | 495          | 345          | 140 |
| 30            | 2165                | 1310          | 880          | 595           | 455           | 360          | 250          | 95  |
| 40            | 2165                | 1310          | 880          | 595           | 455           | 360          | 250          | 95  |

|               | <b>Engine Coola</b> | nt Temperatur | e Sensor Ran | ge Performano | ce (S-Type Fro | m 2004 Model | Year) – ECT1 |      |
|---------------|---------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|------|
|               |                     |               |              | Start E       | CT (°C)        |              |              |      |
| Min. IAT (°C) | -15                 | 0             | 15           | 30            | 45             | 60           | 75           | 80   |
| -15           | 2570                | 2405          | 2245         | 2025          | 2025           | 2025         | 2025         | 2025 |
| 0             | 2570                | 2000          | 1840         | 1775          | 1775           | 1775         | 1775         | 1775 |
| 15            | 2570                | 2000          | 910          | 785           | 785            | 785          | 785          | 785  |
| 30            | 2570                | 2000          | 910          | 630           | 630            | 630          | 630          | 630  |
| 40            | 2570                | 2000          | 910          | 630           | 630            | 630          | 630          | 630  |

| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Range Performance (XK8 From 2004 Model Year) – ECT1 |      |                            |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|------|----------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|--|--|
|   |      | Start ECT (°C)             |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |  |
| Min. IAT (°C)   | -15  | -15 0 15 30 45 50 60 70 80 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |  |  |
| -15   | 2250 | 2150                       | 1950 | 1750 | 1550 | 1550 | 1550 | 1550 | 1550 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0   | 2250 | 1400                       | 1250 | 1100 | 950  | 950  | 950  | 950  | 950  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 15  | 2250 | 1400                       | 950  | 800  | 650  | 650  | 650  | 650  | 650  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 30  | 2250 | 1400                       | 950  | 625  | 625  | 625  | 625  | 625  | 625  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 45  | 2250 | 1400                       | 950  | 625  | 625  | 625  | 625  | 625  | 625  |  |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 99 of 152



|               | Engine Co | olant Temper   | rature Senso | r Range Perf | ormance (Nev | w XJ From 2 | 004 Model Ye | ear) – ECT1 |      |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------|-----------|----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|------|--|--|--|--|--|
|               |           | Start ECT (°C) |              |              |              |             |              |             |      |  |  |  |  |  |
| Min. IAT (°C) | -15       | 0              | 15           | 30           | 45           | 50          | 60           | 70          | 80   |  |  |  |  |  |
| -15           | 4404      | 4404           | 4404         | 4205         | 4205         | 4205        | 4205         | 4205        | 4205 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0             | 4404      | 1744           | 1548         | 1358         | 1093         | 1093        | 1093         | 1093        | 1093 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 15            | 4404      | 1744           | 1021         | 882          | 733          | 733         | 733          | 733         | 733  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 30            | 4404      | 1744           | 1021         | 655          | 514          | 514         | 514          | 514         | 514  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 45            | 4404      | 1744           | 1021         | 655          | 396          | 396         | 396          | 396         | 396  |  |  |  |  |  |

|               | En   | gine Coc | lant Tem | perature | Sensor | Range Pe   | erforman    | ce (X400    | 2008 Mo | del Year) | - ECT1 |     |      |
|---------------|------|----------|----------|----------|--------|------------|-------------|-------------|---------|-----------|--------|-----|------|
|               |      |          |          |          |        | Minimum co | oolant temp | erature (°C | )       |           |        |     |      |
| Min. IAT (°C) | -15  |          |          |          |        |            |             |             |         |           |        |     |      |
| -15           | 2337 | 2295     | 2272     | 2225     | 2012   | 1906       | 1677        | 1290        | 625     | 625       | 625    | 625 | 2337 |
| 0             | 2337 | 1310     | 1190     | 1065     | 945    | 885        | 715         | 505         | 220     | 220       | 220    | 220 | 2337 |
| 15            | 2337 | 1310     | 880      | 755      | 665    | 620        | 495         | 345         | 140     | 140       | 140    | 140 | 2337 |
| 30            | 2337 | 1310     | 880      | 595      | 502    | 455        | 360         | 250         | 115     | 115       | 115    | 115 | 2337 |
| 40            | 2337 | 1310     | 880      | 595      | 502    | 455        | 360         | 250         | 95      | 95        | 95     | 95  | 2337 |

| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Range Performance (4.2L) – ECT2 |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Start ECT (°C) -30 -25 -20 -15                                    |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Failure time counter (seconds)                                    | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Range Performance (3.0L) – ECT2 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Start ECT (°C)  | -30 | -20 | -10 | 0   | 10  | 20  | 30  | 40  | 50  | 60  | 70  | 80  |
| Failure time counter (seconds)                                    | 326 | 326 | 324 | 324 | 324 | 324 | 324 | 324 | 324 | 324 | 324 | 324 |

| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Range Performance (New XJ From 2004 Model Year) – ECT2 |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |  |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|
| Start ECT (°C)   | -40 | -32 | -23 | -20 | -15 | -15 |  |  |  |  |
| Failure time counter (seconds)   | 600 | 300 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 |  |  |  |  |

| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Range Performance (XK8 From 2004 Model Year) – ECT2 |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |  |
|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|
| Start ECT (°C)  | -40 | -40 | -30 | -25 | -20 | -15 |  |  |  |  |
| Failure time counter (seconds)  | 300 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 100 of 152



| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Range Performance (S-Type From 2004 Model Year) – ECT2 |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |  |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|
| Start ECT (°C)   | -40 | -30 | -20 | -15 | -15 | -15 |  |  |  |  |
| Failure time counter (seconds)   | 240 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 |  |  |  |  |

| Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor Range Performance (X-Type From 2004 Model Year) – ECT2 |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |  |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|
| Start ECT (°C)   | -40 | -40 | -32 | -23 | -20 | -15 |  |  |  |  |
| Failure time counter (seconds)   | 600 | 600 | 300 | 120 | 120 | 120 |  |  |  |  |

| ECT (P                       | ECT (P0116) Time to closed loop enable temperature (X400 2008 Model Year) – ECT2 |     |       |       |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|------------------------------|--|-----|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Min Coolant Twmperature (°C) | -40  | -40 | -31.9 | -23.1 | -20 | -15 | -15 | -15 | -15 | -15 | -15 | -15 |
| Time (seconds)               | 600  | 600 | 300   | 120   | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 |

| Engi                       | Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor – Fault limit (X400 2008 Model Year) – ECT3 |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Average Temperature (degC) | -15   | -5    | 5     | 25    | 35    | 45    | 55    | 65    |  |  |  |  |
| Fault Limit (V)            | 2.632   | 2.129 | 1.689 | 1.011 | 0.781 | 0.601 | 0.464 | 0.361 |  |  |  |  |

# 6.14.4 Drive Cycle Information

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

#### 6.15 Thermostat Monitor

The monitor operates once per trip and is not a continuous monitor. Every 1 second the monitor compares the actual Engine Coolant Temperature with an estimated temperature. This is derived from a model and accumulates the error between the two temperatures. The model to calculate the estimated Engine Coolant Temperature has look-up tables, which use various engine and vehicle parameters to derive compensation values by which the estimated Engine Coolant Temperature is increased or decreased. These look-up tables' takes into account engine speed, engine airflow, vehicle speed and temperature difference between Intake Air Temperature and Engine Coolant Temperature.

A judgment of whether the thermostat is behaving normally or not is made when the estimated Engine Coolant Temperature reaches a judgment level which is 35°C above starting Engine Coolant Temperature or 80°C, whichever is reached first. The monitor has the ability to make one of three judgments once the judgment point is reached. The judgment made can be "normal", "fail" or "null". The normal judgment is made if the accumulated error is below the calibratable normal level and the actual Engine Coolant Temperature has reached 80°C at the judgment point. The failure judgment is made if the accumulated error equals or exceeds the calibratable failure level at the judgment point. A null judgment is made if the accumulated error is above the normal level and below the failure level at the judgment point. The null judgment is included to allow for the gray area that exists between normal and failed thermostats, as in extreme conditions a failed thermostat may resemble normal behavior and a normal thermostat could resemble failed behavior.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 101 of 152



# **6.15.1 Monitoring Structure**

|             |       |                                 | Thermost                    | tat Monitor     |                               |                  |                  |         |
|-------------|-------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|------------------|------------------|---------|
| Component/  | Fault | Monitoring Strategy             | Malfunction                 | Threshold       | Secondary                     | Enable           | Time             | MIL     |
| System      | Codes | Description                     | Criteria                    | value           | Parameter                     | Conditions       | Required         |         |
| Thermostat  | P0128 | Comparisons of actual warm up   | Accumulated difference      | See table       | Intake Air Temperature        | - 8 to 100 °C    | Dependent on     | 2 Drive |
| range/      |       | profile with estimated profile. | between estimated ECT       |                 | Engine Coolant Temperature    | - 8 to 100 °C    | drive cycle      | Cycles  |
| performance |       |                                 | and actual ECT is too large |                 | ECT at engine start           | - 8 to 60 °C     | (typically 460s) |         |
|             |       | estimated ECT increases by 35   |                             |                 | Airflow                       | >= 1 g/s         |                  |         |
|             |       | °C or reaches 80 °C             |                             |                 | Engine Speed                  | >= 400           |                  |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 | C1155, C1165, C1175, P0010, F |                  |                  |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 | P0103, P0107, P0108, P0111, P |                  |                  |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 | P0123, P0125, P0128, P0131, P |                  |                  |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 | P0174, P0175, P0201, P0202, P |                  |                  |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 | P0223, P0335, P0336, P0340, P |                  |                  |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 | P0355, P0356, P0357, P0358, P |                  |                  |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 | P1108, P1224, P1229, P1241, P |                  |                  |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 | P1368, P1384, P1396, P1611, P |                  |                  | 642,    |
|             |       |                                 |                             | P1646, P1647, F | P0562, P0563, P0607, P2118, P | '2119, P2135, P2 | 2228, P2229      |         |
|             |       |                                 |                             |                 |                               |                  |                  |         |

|          |       | Thermos | tat Monitor | - P0128 Fa | ult limit thre | eshold (X40   | 0 2008 Mod | el Year) |     |       |
|----------|-------|---------|-------------|------------|----------------|---------------|------------|----------|-----|-------|
|          |       |         |             |            | Coolant tem    | perature (°C) |            |          |     |       |
| IAT (°C) | -10   | 0       | 10          | 20         | 25             | 30            | 40         | 50       | 60  | -10   |
| -30      | 10110 | 7300    | 5110        | 3400       | 2700           | 2000          | 1200       | 1000     | 900 | 10110 |
| -20      | 10110 | 7300    | 5110        | 3200       | 2500           | 1800          | 1100       | 900      | 850 | 10110 |
| -10      | 10110 | 7300    | 5110        | 3100       | 2375           | 1650          | 1000       | 850      | 800 | 10110 |
| 0        | 10110 | 7300    | 5110        | 2980       | 2240           | 1500          | 1000       | 750      | 750 | 10110 |
| 10       | 10110 | 7300    | 4500        | 2500       | 1850           | 1200          | 750        | 750      | 750 | 10110 |
| 20       | 10110 | 7300    | 3500        | 1400       | 920            | 600           | 600        | 600      | 600 | 10110 |
| 30       | 10110 | 7300    | 3500        | 1400       | 920            | 600           | 600        | 600      | 600 | 10110 |
| 40       | 10110 | 7300    | 3500        | 1400       | 920            | 600           | 500        | 500      | 500 | 10110 |

**6.15.2 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 102 of 152



### 6.16 Throttle Position Sensor

The Throttle Position sensor comprises of a potentiometer with a pointer that is rotated by the throttle shaft. The ECM supplies the potentiometer with a nominal 5 volts. The signal output from the Throttle Position sensor to the ECM depends on the position of the pointer and ultimately the position of the throttle shaft. The sensor's position in relation to the shaft cannot be adjusted and the ECM compensates for wear and aging in service.

# **6.16.1 Monitoring Structure**

|                                  |  |                     | Throttle Po              | sition Senso   | r               |              |                        |                   |
|----------------------------------|--|---------------------|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| Component/                       | Fault  | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction              | Threshold      | Secondary       | Enable       | Time                   | MIL               |
| System                           | Codes  | Description         | Criteria                 | value          | Parameter       | Conditions   | Required               |                   |
| Throttle position 1 low input    | P0122  | Out of range check  | Output voltage           | <= 0.35 volts  |                 | Ignition on  | 1.0s                   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Throttle position 1 high input   | P0123  | Out of range check  | Output voltage           | >= 4.9 volts   |                 | Ignition on  | 1.0s (V6)<br>0.1s (V8) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Throttle position<br>2 low input | P0222  | Out of range check  | Output voltage           | <= 0.35 volts  |                 | Ignition on  | 1.0s                   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Throttle position 2 high input   | P0223  | Out of range check  | Output voltage           | >= 4.9 volts   |                 | Ignition on  | 1.0s (V6)<br>0.1s (V8) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| performance                      | P0121<br>P2135<br>(2005<br>model<br>year X-<br>Type) | Rationality 1 to 2  | Signal 1 versus signal 2 | See table TPS1 | Battery voltage | 9 to 18v     | 0.1s                   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                                  |  |                     |                          |                | Disable:        | P1241, P1242 |                        |                   |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 103 of 152



|                          | Throttle Position Sensor Range Performance – TPS1 |      |      |      |     |      |      |      |  |  |  |
|--------------------------|---|------|------|------|-----|------|------|------|--|--|--|
| Throttle angle (degrees) | 0.00  | 2.00 | 2.13 | 4.25 | 9.0 | 20.5 | 32.0 | 84.0 |  |  |  |
| Value (degrees)          | 3.2   | 3.2  | 3.2  | 6.7  | 7.1 | 10.0 | 11.1 | 11.1 |  |  |  |

| Throttle Position Sensor Range Performance (2008MY) – TPS1 |      |      |      |      |      |       |       |       |  |
|--|------|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| Throttle angle (degrees)                                   | 0.00 | 2.00 | 2.13 | 4.25 | 9.00 | 20.50 | 32.00 | 84.00 |  |
| Value (degrees)  | 4.23 | 4.36 | 4.36 | 6.37 | 8.8  | 12.89 | 13.61 | 19.23 |  |

**6.16.2 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 104 of 152



# 6.17 Engine Oil Temperature Sensor

## 6.17.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software. If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

# 6.17.2 Range/Performance Failure

The EOT movement is monitored during the warm up phase of a trip. If the Engine Coolant Temperature is cool enough at start and rises by the required amount then a judgment is made on the EOT. If the EOT movement (maximum reading for the trip – minimum reading for the trip) has not been sufficient then a failure judgment will be made.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 105 of 152



# **6.17.3 Monitoring Structure**

|                           | Engine Oil temperature Sensor |  |   |                        |  |   |                                  |                   |  |  |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|--|---|------------------------|--|---|----------------------------------|-------------------|--|--|
| Component/<br>System      | Fault<br>Codes                | Monitoring Strategy Description  | Malfunction<br>Criteria   | Threshold value        | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions  | Time<br>Required                 | MIL               |  |  |
|                           | P0198                         |  | Sensor voltage  | <= 0.03 volts          | raiamotor  | Ignition on   | 0.5s                             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
| EOT low input             | P0197                         | Out of range check   | Sensor voltage  | >= 4.6 volts           |  | Ignition on   | 0.5s                             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
| EOT range/<br>performance | P0196                         | Rationality versus ECT   | EOT rise too low compared to ECT rise   | <= 2.5 °C              | EOT Engine Coolant Temperature ECT rise Intake Air Temperature   | <= 130°C<br>-30 - 100°C<br>>= 45 °C<br>-30 - 100°C                              | Dependent<br>on drive<br>cycle   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
|                           |                               | EOTS stuck (2008MY)  | EOTS change (2008MY)  |                        | Delta oil temperature  | -30 - 50°C (2008MY)<br><= 0.015 V in 0.128 s<br>(2008MY)                        |                                  |                   |  |  |
| EOT range/<br>performance | P0196                         | Rationality versus Engine Coolant Temperature and Inlet air temperature (2008MY) | Average_EOT - (average_ECT + average_IAT)/2  Or  (average_ECT+ average_IAT)/2 | > 20 degC<br>> 20 degC | Engine Stall Condition Block Heater Time after start Engine off time   | Not set<br>Not detected<br>120 <= time <= 200 s<br>28800 <= time <=<br>655000 s | Dependent<br>upon<br>drive cycle | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
|                           |                               |  | - Average_EOT   |                        | Difference between Engine<br>Coolant Temperature<br>average and inlet air<br>temperature average at<br>ignition on | <= 10 degC  |                                  |                   |  |  |
|                           |                               |  |   |                        | Disable  | :P0111, P0112, P0113<br>P0118, P0125, P0128,<br>P1241, P1242                    |                                  |                   |  |  |

**6.17.4 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 106 of 152



# 6.18 Fuel Rail Temperature Sensor

# 6.18.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software. If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. If the voltage is over the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

## 6.18.2 Range/Performance Failure

The monitor checks that the fuel rail temperature sensor signal is not stuck within the normal operating range. It checks that the signal has varied by a calibrated amount before the Engine Coolant Temperature signal has increased by 40°C and twenty minutes of engine running has elapsed. Maximum and minimum values of fuel rail temperature and Engine Coolant Temperature are continually calculated. If the difference between the fuel rail temperature maximum and minimum values is greater than the calibrated threshold then normal judgment is made. For failure judgment, the monitor can only flag a failure if a cold start is detected. A cold start is detected when the difference between the Intake Air Temperature and Engine Coolant Temperature is less than a second calibrated value.

## 6.18.3 Monitoring Structure

| Fuel Rail Temperature Sensor                 |       |                     |  |               |  |  |  |                   |  |
|--|-------|---------------------|--|---------------|--|--|--|-------------------|--|
| Component/                                   | Fault | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction                                | Threshold     | Secondary  | Enable   | Time                                       | MIL               |  |
| System                                       | Codes | Description         | Criteria                                   | value         | Parameter  | Conditions   | Required                                   |                   |  |
| Fuel rail<br>temperature<br>sensor low input |       | Out of range check  | Voltage too low                            | <= 0.03 volts |  | Ignition on  | 0.5s                                       | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |
| •  |       | Out of range check  | Voltage too high                           | >= 4.6 volts  |  | Ignition on  | 0.5s                                       | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |
| •  | P0181 | _                   | Fuel rail temperature; maximum-<br>minimum | <= 1.9°C      | Fuel rail temperature ECT rise ECT at engine start After start time Difference between IAT and ECT at engine start Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature | <= 100°C<br>>= 40°C<br><= 40°C<br>>= 1200s<br><= 5°C<br>-30 to 100°C<br>-8.13 to 100°C<br>-8.13 to 100°C | (S-Type<br>2004 MY)<br>(S-Type<br>2004 MY) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 107 of 152



| Fuel Rail Temperature Sensor                             |       |   |  |                        |  |   |                                  |                   |  |
|--|-------|---|--|------------------------|--|---|----------------------------------|-------------------|--|
| Component/   | Fault | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction  | Threshold              | Secondary  | Enable  | Time                             | MIL               |  |
| System   | Codes | Description   | Criteria   | value                  | Parameter  | Conditions  | Required                         |                   |  |
| Fuel rail<br>temperature<br>sensor range/<br>performance | P0181 | Fuel rail temperature<br>rationality compared to<br>ECT and IAT<br>(2008MY) | Average_FRT - (average_ECT + average_IAT)/2  Or (average_ECT+ average_IAT)/2 | > 20 degC<br>> 20 degC | Engine Stall Condition Block Heater Time after start Engine off time                                 | Not set<br>Not detected<br>120 <= time <= 200 s<br>28800 <= time <=   | Dependent<br>upon<br>drive cycle | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |
|  |       |   | - Average_FRT  |                        | Difference between ECT average and inlet air temperature average at ignition on                      | 655000 s<br><= 10 degC  |                                  |                   |  |
| Fuel rail<br>temperature<br>sensor range/<br>performance | P0181 | Fuel rail temperature stuck (2008MY)  | EOTS Change<br><u>And</u>  | < 1.9 degC             | Cold Start Identified at engine start  | ECT < 40 degC And Difference Between ECT & IAT <= 10 degC   | Dependent<br>upon<br>drive cycle | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |
|  |       |   | Engine Coolant Temperature   | > 80 degC              | Engine Coolant Temperature Intake Air Temperature Delta FRT Delta ECT Fuel Temperature Change in ECT | -30 < T < 100 degC<br>-30 < IAT < 50 degC<br><= 0.015 V in 0.128 s<br><= 0.015 V & <= 20<br>degC in 0.128 s<br>< 100 degC<br>>= 50 degC |                                  |                   |  |
|  |       |   |  | Disable:               | Time after start<br>P0111, P0112, P0113, P0116, P0<br>P0460, P0562, P0563, P0603, P1                 |   |                                  | P0183,            |  |

**6.18.4 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 108 of 152



#### 6.19 Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor

# 6.19.1 High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the sensor is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software. If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. If the voltage exceeds the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

#### 6.19.2 Stuck Detection

Stuck at monitoring executes when closed loop fuel pump control is executing. It checks that the fuel rail pressure signal has varied by at least 5 kPa over a range of demanded fuel pump duties. The maximum and minimum fuel rail pressures are updated each time. The change in demand duty is integrated and when the integral reaches 4%, the variation between the maximum and minimum values is checked. If it is less than 5kPa, failure judgment is made; otherwise, a normal judgment is made.

#### 6.19.3 Offset Detection

This part of the monitor executes when the vehicle is idling. When closed loop fuel pump control is executing, a settle timer is incremented. After the counter reaches 5 seconds monitoring can be started. This is to allow the system time to settle after a transition from open to closed loop fuel pump control. Once the counter is greater than 5 seconds the target pressure is checked against the actual fuel rail pressure. If the error is less than the failure threshold, a normal counter is started. If the normal counter reaches 1 second, normal judgment is made. If the target to actual error is greater than the failure threshold, a failure counter is started. If the failure counter reaches 5 seconds then failure judgment is made.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 109 of 152



# **6.19.4 Monitoring Structure**

|   |       |   | Fuel Rail Pre  | ssure Senso  | or  |  |                          |                   |
|---|-------|---|--|--------------|---|--|--------------------------|-------------------|
| Component/  | Fault | Monitoring Strategy                           | Malfunction  | Threshold    | Secondary   | Enable                                 | Time                     | MIL               |
| System  | Codes | Description                                   | Criteria   | value        | Parameter   | Conditions                             | Required                 |                   |
| Fuel rail pressure sensor                                     | P0192 | Out of range check                            | Voltage too low  | <= 0.1 volts |   | Ignition on                            | 0.5s                     | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| low input Fuel rail pressure sensor high input                | P0193 | Out of range check                            | Voltage too high   | >= 4.9 volts |   | Ignition on                            | 0.5s                     | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Fuel rail pressure sensor range/ performance offset detection |       | Comparison with target pressure               | Error  | >= 30 kPa    | Fuel level<br>Idle flag set<br>Fuel pump feedback<br>control  | >= 11%<br>>= 5s<br>Executing           | 5s                       | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Fuel rail pressure sensor range/ performance stuck detection  | P0191 | Rationality versus fuel pump<br>duty integral | Pressure change too low when fuel pump integral duty above threshold | <= 5 kPa     | Fuel level Fuel pump feedback control Fuel pump integral duty | >= 11%<br>Executing<br>>= 4%           | Dependent on drive cycle | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Stuck detection   |       |   |  |              | Disable:  | P1241, P1242, P12<br>P1609, P0192, P01 |                          |                   |

# **6.19.5 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 110 of 152



# 6.20 Fuel Injectors

The fuel injector monitor operates on a continuous basis. Open and short detection of each injector is possible by comparing the actual injection signal with a target injection signal. The actual injection signal is derived from a change in injector voltage when the injector is turned off and the target injection signal is derived from an injection set flag.

A normal judgment is made when the injector voltage moves from the on to off position i.e. on the signal edge. If the target signal and the actual signal are both set to one, a normal judgment is made. This process is repeated for each injector in firing order. A failure judgment is made when no injector signal edge is detected i.e. no change in voltage but the injector has been triggered.

# **6.20.1 Monitoring Structure**

|                      |                |                                    | Fuel                    | Injector N      | lonitor   |  |                      |         |  |  |
|----------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|---|--|----------------------|---------|--|--|
| Component/<br>System | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy<br>Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Require<br>d | MIL     |  |  |
| Cylinder 1           | P0201          | Drive hardware check               | Commanded versus actual | 10 times        | Engine speed<br>ECT   | 200 – 7000   | 20                   | 2 Drive |  |  |
| Cylinder 2           | P0202          | Drive hardware check               | Commanded versus actual | 10 times        | IAT Airflow change  | >= - 30°C<br>>= - 30°C<br>< 2g/s/s (up to 2004 model year)               | revolutions          | Cycles  |  |  |
| Cylinder 3           | P0203          | Drive hardware check               | Commanded versus actual | 10 times        | (not 2008MY)<br>Injector pulse width  | < 31g/s/s (2004 model year)  |                      |         |  |  |
| Cylinder 4           | P0204          | Drive hardware check               | Commanded versus actual | 10 times        | Battery voltage TP sensor change  | 10 to 16v<br>< 22 deg/s  |                      |         |  |  |
| Cylinder 5           | P0205          | Drive hardware check               | Commanded versus actual | 10 times        | (not 2008MY)  | <= 44 deg/s (V8 2004 model year)<br><= 56 deg/s (S-Type 2004 model year) |                      |         |  |  |
| Cylinder 6           | P0206          | Drive hardware check               | Commanded versus actual | 10 times        | Fuel cut-off  | <= 37 deg/s (X-Type 2004 model year) Not active                          |                      |         |  |  |
| Cylinder 7 (V8 only) | P0207          | Drive hardware check               | Commanded versus actual | 10 times        | Time after start  MAF rate of   | >= 0s<br><= 2.0 g/s/0.064 s  |                      |         |  |  |
| Cylinder 8 (V8 only) | P0208          | Drive hardware check               | Commanded versus actual | 10 times        | change (2008MY)<br>MAF (2008MY)<br>TP rate of change<br>(2008MY)  | 0 <= MAF <= 400 g/s<br>< 0.30 deg/s/0.008 s                              |                      |         |  |  |
|                      |                |                                    |                         | Disable:        | Engine starting Not active P0101, P0102, P0103, P0111- P0113, P0121- P0123, P0222, P0223, P0336, P0351- P0358, P1367, P1368, P0603, P0607, P1104, P1224, P1229, P1251, P1367, P1368, P1609, P1611, P1631, P1633, P1637, P1642, P2118, P2119, P2135, C1165, C1175, C1137 |  |                      |         |  |  |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 111 of 152



| INJ1 - 4.2L (All from 2004 Model Year) |       |       |       |       |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Engine speed (RPM)                     | 500   | 1000  | 1500  | 2000  | 2500 | 3000 | 3500 | 4000 | 5000 | 6000 | 7000 |
| Injector pulse width (us)              | 42000 | 21000 | 14000 | 10500 | 8400 | 7000 | 6000 | 5300 | 4200 | 3500 | 3000 |

| INJ1 – 3.0L               |       |       |       |       |       |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|---------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Engine speed (RPM)        | 500   | 1000  | 1500  | 2000  | 2500  | 3000 | 3500 | 4000 | 5000 | 6000 | 7000 |
| Injector pulse width (us) | 56000 | 28000 | 18700 | 14000 | 11200 | 9300 | 8000 | 7000 | 5600 | 4700 | 4000 |

**6.20.2 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 112 of 152



# 6.21 Fuel Pumps

### 6.21.1 Primary Fuel Pump - No Commands Received

The rear electronics module drives the fuel pump motor. It also monitors the circuit and sends its status to the ECM via the communications network buses. As part of this status, the ECM receives flags indicating invalid input and open circuit on the battery supply. If either of these flags indicates a fault for longer than a set time, then a fault judgment is made and P1234 is logged.

## 6.21.2 Primary Fuel Pump - Not Working When Requested

The ECM also receives a 'fuel pump loss of ground' flag via the CAN network from the rear electronics module. If this flag is set for longer than a pre-defined time a fault judgment is made and P1236 is logged.

# 6.21.3 Primary Fuel Pump Circuit High/Low Fault

The ECM also receives the following flag via the CAN bus from the rear electronics module:

- Fuel pump monitor line open circuit.
- Fuel pump monitor line short circuit to battery.
- Fuel pump monitor line short circuit to ground

If any of these flags indicate a fault for longer than a set time, then a fault is registered and P1338 is logged.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 113 of 152



# **6.21.4 Monitoring Structure**

|                   |       | Р                              | rimary Fuel Pump –          | Up to 2004 N    | lodel Year      |            |          |         |
|-------------------|-------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------|----------|---------|
| Component/        | Fault | Monitoring Strategy            | Malfunction                 | Threshold       | Secondary       | Enable     | Time     | MIL     |
| System            | Codes | Description                    | Criteria                    | value           | Parameter       | Conditions | Required |         |
| No fuel pump      | P1234 | Monitor control module control | Control module control line | Battery voltage | Battery voltage | 10 volts   | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |
| commands          |       | line                           | invalid input               |                 | Delay counter   | 3.5s       |          | Cycles  |
| received          |       |                                |                             |                 | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75% |          |         |
| Fuel pump not     | P1236 | Control module circuit         | Control module loss of      | No signal       | Battery voltage | 10 volts   | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |
| working when      |       |                                | ground                      |                 | Delay counter   | 3.5s       |          | Cycles  |
| requested         |       |                                |                             |                 | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75% |          |         |
| Circuit low input | P1338 | Monitor control module monitor | Control module monitor line | Battery voltage | Battery voltage | 10 volts   | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |
|                   |       | line                           | high                        |                 | Delay counter   | 3.5s       |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       |                                |                             |                 | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75% |          |         |
| Circuit high      | P1338 | Monitor control module monitor | Control module monitor line | No signal       | Battery voltage | 10 volts   | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |
| input             |       | line                           | low                         |                 | Delay counter   | 3.5s       |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       |                                |                             |                 | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75% |          |         |
|                   |       |                                |                             |                 | Disable:        | P1609      |          |         |

|   |                | P                                   | rimary Fuel Pump –                    | From 2004 Mo                             | del Year  |  |                  |                   |
|---|----------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|---|--|------------------|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System                          | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description     | Malfunction<br>Criteria               | Threshold value                          | Secondary<br>Parameter                                      | Enable<br>Conditions                         | Time<br>Required | MIL               |
| No fuel pump commands                         | P1234          | Monitor control module control line |                                       | < 39.2% (X-Type)<br>< 35.2% (all others) | Battery voltage<br>Delay counter                            | 10 volts<br>3.5s                             | 4.5s             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| received Fuel pump not working when requested | P1236          | Control module circuit              | Control module status line duty cycle | > 60.8% (X-Type)<br>> 64.8% (all others) | Fuel pump duty Battery voltage Delay counter Fuel pump duty | 25% to 75%<br>10 volts<br>3.5s<br>25% to 75% | 4.5s             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| requested                                     |                |                                     |                                       |  | Disable:  | P1609  |                  |                   |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 114 of 152



|                   |       | Pr                     | imary Fuel Pump – 2        | X-Type 2005 Mc       | odel Year       |             |          |         |
|-------------------|-------|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------|
| Component/        | Fault | Monitoring Strategy    | Malfunction                | Threshold            | Secondary       | Enable      | Time     | MIL     |
| System            | Codes | Description            | Criteria                   | value                | Parameter       | Conditions  | Required |         |
| No fuel pump      | P0627 | Monitor control module | Control module status line | < 39.2% (X-Type)     | Battery voltage | 10 volts    | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |
| commands          |       | control line           | duty cycle                 | < 35.2% (all others) | Delay counter   | 3.5s        |          | Cycles  |
| received          |       |                        |                            |                      | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75%  |          |         |
| Fuel pump not     | P2635 | Control module circuit | Control module status line | > 60.8% (X-Type)     | Battery voltage | 10 volts    | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |
| working when      |       |                        | duty cycle                 | > 64.8% (all others) | Delay counter   | 3.5s        |          | Cycles  |
| requested         |       |                        |                            |                      | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75%  |          |         |
| Circuit low input | P0628 | Monitor control module | Control module status line | Battery voltage      |                 | Ignition on | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |
|                   |       | status line            | high                       |                      | Delay counter   | 3.5s        |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       |                        |                            |                      | Battery voltage | 10 volts    |          |         |
|                   |       |                        |                            |                      | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75%  |          |         |
| Circuit high      | P0628 | Monitor control module | Control module status line | No signal            |                 | Ignition on | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |
| input             |       | status line            | low                        |                      | Delay counter   | 3.5s        |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       |                        |                            |                      | Battery voltage | 10 volts    |          |         |
|                   |       |                        |                            |                      | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75%  |          |         |
|                   |       |                        |                            |                      | Disable:        | P1609       |          |         |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 115 of 152



# **6.21.5 Secondary Fuel Pump Monitor**

A status flag monitors the Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) signal from the secondary fuel pump driver module. When this status flag is stuck low for a set time, then a fault is flagged and P1233 is logged. When this status flag is stuck high, or the PWM duty is outside a calibrated range for a set time, then a fault is flagged and P1339 is logged.

# **6.21.6 Monitoring Structure**

|                     | Secondary Fuel Pump – Supercharged Vehicles Only |                                |                             |              |                 |              |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------|--|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Component/          | Fault  | Monitoring Strategy            | Malfunction                 | Threshold    | Secondary       | Enable       | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |  |  |
| System              | Codes  | Description                    | Criteria                    | value        | Parameter       | Conditions   | Required |         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Fuel pump           | P1233  | Monitor control module control | Control module control line | < 0.392s     | Battery voltage | 10 volts     | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |  |
| driver circuit      |  | line                           | duty cycle                  |              | Delay counter   | 3.5s         |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |  |
| input circuit fault |  |                                |                             |              | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75%   |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Fuel pump           | P1339  | Control module circuit         | Control module control line | 608 - 1.000s | Battery voltage | 10 volts     | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |  |
| driver circuit      |  |                                | duty cycle                  |              | Delay counter   | 3.5s         |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |  |
| output fault        |  |                                |                             |              | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75%   |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Circuit low input   | P1339  | Monitor control module monitor | Control module control line | No signal    | Battery voltage | 10 volts     | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |  |
|                     |  | line                           | duty cycle                  |              | Delay counter   | 3.5s         |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                     |  |                                |                             |              | Fuel pump duty  | 25% to 75%   |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
| Circuit high        | P1339  | Monitor control module monitor | Control module control line | No signal    | Battery voltage | 10 volts     | 4.5s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |  |
| input               |  | line                           | duty cycle                  |              | Delay counter   | 3.5s         |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                     |  |                                |                             |              | Fuel pump duty  | 25%>Duty>75% |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |
|                     |  |                                |                             |              | Disable:        | P1609        |          |         |  |  |  |  |  |

# **6.21.7 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 116 of 152



#### 6.22 Fuel Level Sensor

There are two parts to the fuel level sensor monitor. The output of the fuel level sensor is monitored to detect if its output does not change as fuel is used. It is also monitored when the vehicle is stationary and fuel movement is expected to be at a minimum to check for a noisy signal.

#### 6.22.1 Fuel Level Stuck Monitor

The fuel level is monitored continuously and it needs to change by more than a set percentage before a calculated amount of fuel is used. This process will operate through cumulative trips if necessary. Once the fuel level changes by the amount required the process is reset and starts again. If the fuel used threshold is reached before the fuel level changes by the required percentage, a temporary fault will be stored. A second occurrence will cause the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) to be illuminated.

### 6.22.2 Fuel Level Noisy Monitor

Once the fuel level percentage has changed to satisfy the stuck monitor described above and a few other entry conditions have been met, the system will complete a fuel level noisy test in the next available idle period. When the vehicle comes to rest the fuel movement will be allowed to subside. The output of the fuel level sensor will be monitored for a short period. During this period the output of the fuel level sensor will be integrated and compared to a threshold, which is set to find faulty fuel level sensors. This process is repeated as the fuel level falls. If the failure threshold is exceeded a first trip temporary failure flag will be set. A further failure in the next trip will illuminate the MIL.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 117 of 152



# **6.22.3 Monitoring Structure**

|                                     |                |                                 |                         | Fuel Level Sensor   |  |  |                                |                   |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|---|--|--|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| Component/<br>System                | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria | Threshold value   | Secondary<br>Parameter   | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required               | MIL               |
| Fuel level<br>sensor circuit        | P0460          | Rationality versus fuel used    | Fuel level change       | <= 3%<br><= 6% (S-Type)   | Fuel used (calculated) After start Battery voltage Disable:                            | \  | Dependent<br>on drive<br>cycle | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Fuel level<br>sensor<br>malfunction | P0460          |                                 |                         | >= 5000/20s (S-Type)<br>>= 2500/20s<br>(X-Type)<br>>=11000/20s (XJ) | Battery voltage Vehicle speed Fuel level Then Vehicle speed Entry delay Monitor period | >= 3%<br>>= 6% (S-Type)<br>8 to 16 volts<br>10 to 16 volts (2004<br>model year)<br>> 31mph for >20s<br>15 to 85%<br>5 to 95% (2008MY)<br>= 0<br>10s<br>20s<br><= 410 mph/0.064 s<br><= 0.25 mph<br>(between CAN<br>messages) | 3, P0561, P0<br>0, P1241, P1   | 562,<br>242,      |

**6.22.4 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 118 of 152



#### 6.23 Knock Sensor

'Knocking' or 'pinking' is caused by uncontrolled combustion and can result in engine damage as well as excessive emissions. Knocking noises are essentially vibrations with frequencies that are detected by a piezo-electric sensing element and converted into electrical signals. Two knock sensors are strategically located on the engine casing and switched to the firing sequence so that knocking from any cylinder may be detected.

# 6.23.1 High/Low Input Failure

High and low input failure of the knock sensor is detected in the knock sensor processor and is then transmitted to the ECM. The Direct Current (DC) voltage of the sensor is compared with the upper and lower limits in order to judge high or low input failure.

#### 6.23.2 Knock Sensor Processor Failure

Knock sensor processor failure is detected within the processor and is then transmitted to the ECM.

## 6.23.3 Monitoring Structure

|                             |                                       |                        | Knock  | Sensor  |                                       |                     |                                     |                   |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|--|---|---------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Component/                  | Fault                                 | Monitoring Strategy    | Malfunction  | Threshold                                     | Secondary                             | Enable              | Time                                | MIL               |
| System                      | Codes                                 | Description            | Criteria   | value   | Parameter                             | Conditions          | Required                            |                   |
| Knock sensor A              | P0327                                 | Out of range check     | Sensor output low and  | <= 1.25 volts                                 | After start                           | >= 3s               | 8 revolutions                       | 2 Drive           |
| low input                   |                                       |                        | knock sensor processor<br>reporting failure                          | <=1.3v (2004<br>model year)                   | Engine speed                          | >= 500 RPM          | 64 revolutions<br>(2004 model year) | Cycles            |
| Knock sensor B<br>low input | P0332                                 | Out of range check     |  |   |                                       |                     |                                     |                   |
| Knock sensor A high input   | P0328                                 |                        | Sensor output low and<br>knock sensor processor<br>reporting failure | >= 3.75 volts<br>>= 3.8v (2004<br>model year) | After start<br>Engine speed           | >= 3s<br>>= 500 RPM |                                     | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Knock sensor B high input   | P0333                                 | Out of range check     |  |   |                                       |                     | ,                                   |                   |
|                             | P1648                                 | Knock sensor processor | Knock sensor processor   |   | After camshaft and crank              | >= 5s               | 8 revolutions                       | 2 Drive           |
| processor<br>failure        | P0324 (2005<br>model year X-<br>Type) | self check             | reporting self-check failure   |   | sensors judged normal<br>Engine speed | >= 500 RPM          | 64 revolutions<br>(2004 model year) | Cycles            |
|                             | ,                                     |                        |  |   | Disable:                              | P1609               |                                     |                   |

# **6.23.4 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 119 of 152



# 6.24 Variable Valve Timing

VVT is a mechanically operated, electronically controlled system and is fitted to all current Jaguar engines except the 4.2L V8 supercharger.

The system comprises an actuator (phaser) built into the camshaft chain sprocket and an oil control valve which controls the flow of oil to the camshaft phaser. The system is controlled via the oil control valve and CMP sensors. The oil control valve varies the oil flow into the camshaft phaser and creates a variable offset between the camshaft and the camshaft sprocket, feedback for this system is provided by the CMP sensors.

The monitors for this topic are best described in two sections. The first section is concerned with VVT position failure and normal operation counters. If calibratable conditions are met for a failure condition then fault counters are incremented. The same applies for normal operation of the VVT system. The counters are then compared to a calibratable constant (threshold) and a judgment made. For a failure judgment, the failure counter has to be of an equal or higher value than the threshold constant and likewise, for a normal judgment the normal counter has to be equal or greater than the normal counter. Once these comparisons have been carried out, the relevant failure/judgment flags are set.

The second section of this monitor is concerned with monitoring the oil control valve on both banks 1 and 2. The oil control valve duty output is compared to an upper and lower threshold and the state of the latch port (1 = output, 0 = no output). If oil control valve duty output is outside of the upper/lower band and the latch has no output then a failure counter is incremented. If the conditions are not met, the monitor moves on to the next comparison. The oil control valve duty output is compared to an upper and lower threshold and the state of the latch port (output/no output). If the oil control valve duty output is outside of the upper/lower band and the latch has an output then the failure counter is set to zero, normal judgment flag set to 1 and failure judgment flag set to zero. If the conditions are not met, the monitor moves on to the next comparison. The failure time counter is compared to the failure judgment time threshold and if equal or greater than the threshold a failure flag is set and a present failure flag is set. If none of the comparison conditions are met then the oil control valve latch port is set to zero. This is also performed after the comparisons have been carried out. The monitor now moves onto the flag control section and restarts.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 120 of 152



# **6.24.1 Monitoring Structure**

|                                |       | Variable  | e Valve Timing – Nor    | mally Aspirated                      | d Engines Only               |  |                               |                   |
|--------------------------------|-------|---|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| Component/                     | Fault | Monitoring Strategy                               | Malfunction             | Threshold                            | Secondary                    | Enable   | Time                          | MIL               |
| System                         | Codes | Description                                       | Criteria                | value                                | Parameter                    | Conditions   | Required                      |                   |
| VVT Bank A circuit malfunction | P0010 | Hardware check                                    | Commanded versus actual | Different                            | Oil control valve duty cycle | 30 to 70%  | 5s<br>3s (2004 model<br>year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| VVT Bank B circuit malfunction | P0020 |   |                         |                                      |                              |  |                               | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| VVT Bank A malfunction         |       | Actual cam position compared with target position | Target versus actual    | Error > 20 degrees<br>of crank angle | Engine speed > 0             |  |                               | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| VVT Bank B<br>malfunction      |       | Actual cam position compared with target position | Target versus actual    |                                      |                              |  | `                             | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|                                |       |   |                         |                                      | Disable:                     | P0335, P0336,<br>P1609, P0196,<br>P0197, P0198                         | after cleaning)               |                   |
|                                |       |   |                         |                                      | Bank A<br>Bank B             | P0340, P0341<br>P1340, P1341<br>(P0345, P0346 from<br>2004 model year) |                               |                   |

**6.24.2 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 121 of 152



# 6.25 Ignition Amplifiers/Coils

The ignition amplifiers monitor is very similar in operation to the injectors monitor, albeit with different enable conditions. Please refer to the fuel injectors monitor explanation. The ignition amplifiers have two monitor lines that carry multiplexed ignition amplifier monitor signals whereas the injectors can be monitored individually. It is for this reason that the ignition amplifiers monitor does not operate over such a wide range of engine speeds as the injectors monitor.

# **6.25.1 Monitoring Structure**

|   |       |                     | Ignition Ampl        | ifiers/Coils | S               |                                   |                |                   |
|---|-------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| Component/                              | Fault | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction          | Threshold    | Secondary       | Enable                            | Time           | MIL               |
| System                                  | Codes | Description         | Criteria             | value        | Parameter       | Conditions                        | Required       |                   |
| Ignition amplifiers cylinder 1 Bank A   | P0351 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              | Engine speed    | < 2500 RPM<br><= 3000rpm (2008MY) | 40 revolutions | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier cylinder 2<br>Bank A | P0353 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              | Battery voltage | > 10 volts                        |                | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier cylinder 3<br>Bank A | P0355 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              |                 |                                   |                | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier cylinder 4<br>Bank A | P0357 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              |                 |                                   |                | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier cylinder 1<br>Bank B | P0352 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              |                 |                                   |                | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier cylinder 2<br>Bank B | P0354 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              |                 |                                   |                | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier cylinder 3<br>Bank B | P0356 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              |                 |                                   |                | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier cylinder 4<br>Bank B | P0358 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              |                 |                                   |                | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier group 1              | P1367 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              |                 |                                   | 20 revolution  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Ignition amplifier group 2              | P1368 | Hardware check      | Primary coil current |              |                 |                                   |                | 2 Drive           |
|   |       |                     |                      |              | Disable:        | P1642, P1609, P0336               |                | Cycles            |

# 6.25.2 Drive Cycle Information

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 122 of 152



### 6.26 Charge Air Cooler Water Pump

The charge air cooler water pump monitor has been implemented to prevent engine damage, in the event of water pump failure. The monitor is only present on supercharged variants and operates continuously during each drive, with a sample rate of 2.048 seconds. The basic operation of the monitor is to compare the value of the intercooler IAT 2 against the IAT 1, at the end of a period of steady state operating conditions. Once the defined steady state conditions are satisfied, a drive delay counter is incremented. Upon exceeding a calibrated threshold, if the difference between the two temperature values (IAT 2 – IAT 1) is greater than the mapped threshold, a failure counter is incremented. If the counter exceeds a calibrated threshold, a failure judgment is made. A normal judgment is made if the two temperature values are below the failure threshold, at the point of judgment.

## **6.26.1 Monitoring Structure**

|              | Charge Air Cooler Water Pump – 4.2L Supercharged Only |                     |                    |                |                        |                   |                 |           |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---|---------------------|--------------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/   | Fault   | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction        | Threshold      | Secondary              | Enable            | Time            | MIL       |  |  |  |  |
| System       | Codes   | Description         | Criteria           | value          | Parameter              | Conditions        | Required        |           |  |  |  |  |
| Charge air   | P1474   | Comparison check    | IAT 2 versus IAT 1 | See table WTP1 | 3                      | 80 to 110 °C      | 30s (430s       | 2 Drive   |  |  |  |  |
| cooler water |   |                     |                    |                | Intake Air Temperature | -8 to 100 °C      | including drive | Cycles    |  |  |  |  |
| pump         |   |                     |                    |                | Mass air flow          | 6 to 40 g/s       | counter)        |           |  |  |  |  |
| malfunction  |   |                     |                    |                | Engine speed           | 600 to 4000 RPM   |                 |           |  |  |  |  |
|              |   |                     |                    |                | Vehicle speed          | 18.6 to 74.5 MPH  |                 |           |  |  |  |  |
|              |   |                     |                    |                | Vehicle drive counter  | > 400s            |                 |           |  |  |  |  |
|              |   |                     |                    |                | Disable:               | P0335, P0336, P00 | )96-P0098, P011 | I1-P0113, |  |  |  |  |
|              |   |                     |                    |                |                        | P0101-P0103, P11  | 04, P1637, P164 | 12,       |  |  |  |  |
|              |   |                     |                    |                |                        | P1609, P0116-P01  | 18, P0125, C113 | 37,       |  |  |  |  |
|              |   |                     |                    |                |                        | C1145, C1155, C1  | 165, C1175      |           |  |  |  |  |

| WTP1 (Up to 2004 Model Year)      |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|-----------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| IAT °C                            | -10 | 0  | 10 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 |
| Delta temperature (IAT 2 - IAT 1) | 70  | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 |

| WTP1 (From 2004 Model Year)       |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|-----------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| IAT °C                            | -10 | 0  | 10 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 80 |
| Delta temperature (IAT 2 - IAT 1) | 75  | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 | 70 |

## **6.26.2 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 123 of 152



# 6.27 Idle Speed Control

If all the entry conditions are satisfied, then the monitor will start execution.

If the actual engine speed is more than 100 RPM lower than the target engine speed then a counter is started and once this exceeds the failure time limit a failure judgment is made for idle speed lower than expected.

If the actual engine speed is greater than 200 RPM higher than the target engine speed then a counter is started and once this exceeds the failure time limit a failure judgment is made for idle speed higher than expected.

|            |       |                        | Idle Speed Contro        | ol – Up to 2004  | 4 Model Year                   |                    |               |         |
|------------|-------|------------------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|---------|
| Component/ | Fault | Monitoring Strategy    | Malfunction              | Threshold        | Secondary                      | Enable             | Time          | MIL     |
| System     | Codes | Description            | Criteria                 | value            | Parameter                      | Conditions         | Required      |         |
| ISC        | P0506 | Idle speed lower than  | Idle speed versus target | 100 RPM too low  | Engine Coolant Temperature     | 80 to 110 °C       | 2.8s          | 2 Drive |
|            |       | expected               |                          |                  | Atmospheric pressure           | < 75.5 kPa         |               | Cycles  |
|            | P0507 | Idle speed higher than | Idle speed versus target | 200 RPM too high |                                | > 13.76s           | 2.8s          | 2 Drive |
|            |       | expected               |                          |                  | Transmission oil temperature   | -8 to 125 °C       |               | Cycles  |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | Intake Air Temperature         |                    |               |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | ISC                            | -8 to 110 °C       |               |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | Stable condition               | Active > 4.86s     |               |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | Vehicle speed                  | See below          |               |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  |                                | <= 0.6 mph         |               |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P0336, P0603, P1245, P1246, P1 |                    | •             |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P0106-P0108, P0125, P0111-P01  |                    |               |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P0460, P1224, P1229, P0121, P1 |                    |               |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P1699, P0122, P0123, P0222, P0 | )223, P0616, P0617 | , P0702, P065 | 51,     |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P0606, P0741, P0750,           |                    |               |         |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P0753, P0755, P0758, P0760, P0 | )763, P0765, P0768 | , P0770, P077 | 73,     |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P0740, P0743, P0787, P0788, P0 | , ,                | ,             | ,       |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P0735, P0729, P0780, P0781, P0 | )782, P0783, P0784 | , P0829, P179 | 98,     |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P1799, P1797, P0666, P0641, P1 | 605, P0815, P0815  | , P1774, P070 | 06,     |
|            |       |                        |                          |                  | P0709, P0610, P1783, P1572     |                    |               |         |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 124 of 152



|            | Idle Speed Control - From 2004 Model Year |                                 |                           |                  |                              |                    |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|------------|---|---------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|---------------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/ | Fault                                     | Monitoring Strategy             | Malfunction               | Threshold        | Secondary                    | Enable             | Time          | MIL     |  |  |  |  |
| System     | Codes                                     | Description                     | Criteria                  | value            | Parameter                    | Conditions         | Required      |         |  |  |  |  |
| ISC        | P0506                                     | Idle speed lower than expected  | Idle speed versus target  | 200 RPM too low  | Engine Coolant Temperature   | 80 to 110 °C       | 15s           | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           |                  | Atmospheric pressure         | >= 74.8 kPa        | 3s (XK8)      | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
|            | P0507                                     | Idle speed higher than expected | Idle speed versus target  | 200 RPM too      | After start                  | >= 14s             | 15s           | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           | high             | Transmission oil temperature |                    | 3s (XK8)      | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           |                  | Intake Air Temperature       | -8 to 110 °C       |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           |                  | ISC                          | >= 4.9s Active     |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           |                  | Stable condition             | See below          |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           |                  | Vehicle speed                | <= 0.6 mph         |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 | Disable:                  |                  | 1155, C1165, C1175, P0106, I |                    |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           |                  | )118, P0121, P0122, P0123, P |                    |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           |                  | 0605, P0606, P0610, P0641, P |                    |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           |                  | )711, P0715, P0720, P0725, P |                    |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           | P0734, P0735, P0 | )740, P0741, P0743, P0750, P | 20753, P0755, P075 | 8, P0760, P07 | 763,    |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           | P0765, P0768, P0 | )770, P0773, P0780, P0781, P | 20782, P0783, P078 | 4, P0787, P07 | 788,    |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           | P0815, P0829, P1 | I224, P1229, P1241, P1242, P | P1516, P1572, P160 | 3, P1605, P16 | 609,    |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           | P1611, P1631, P1 | 1633, P1637, P1642, P1643, P | 1699, P1719, P177  | 4, P1783, P17 | 796,    |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 |                           | P1797, P1798, P1 | 1799                         |                    |               |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 | Disable additions (X-Type | P0069, P0562, P0 | 0563, P0851, P1251, P2118, F | 2119, P2135, P222  | 8, P2229.     |         |  |  |  |  |
|            |   |                                 | 2005 model year):         |                  |                              |                    |               |         |  |  |  |  |

Stable condition: The idle speed system is deemed unstable for a period of 1 second, following a change in state of any of the following parameters:

- Park/neutral switch
- Heated screen
- A/C clutch
- Cooling fan fast mode
- Cooling fan slow mode
- Headlamp
- Main beam
- Side lamp
- Footbrake

# **6.27.1 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 125 of 152



# 6.28 Starter Relay

During normal starting, the ECM should pull the low side of the starter motor relay coil to ground. If this voltage is high when starting is being requested, a fault is logged.

# **6.28.1 Monitoring Structure**

|                      | Starter Relay  |                                 |  |                 |   |  |                  |                   |  |  |  |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|--|-----------------|---|--|------------------|-------------------|--|--|--|
| Component/<br>System | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description | Malfunction<br>Criteria                              | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required | MIL               |  |  |  |
| High input           |                | 3.                              | Starter relay is off but starter relay request is on |                 | Ignition Starter relay Starter relay request Time since initialization Battery voltage Disable: | On<br>Off<br>On<br>>0.064s (2008MY)<br>>6.48 (2008MY)<br>P1245, P1246, P16 |                  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |

# **6.28.2 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 126 of 152



# 6.29 Air Conditioning Clutch Relay

This monitor checks to confirm that the A/C control relay is responding to a request from the ECM to switch it on or off. When the entry conditions have been met the ECM compares the state of the A/C compressor clutch relay to the commanded state. If they do not agree then a timer is started. If at the end of the period the commanded and actual relay states do not agree then the DTC is flagged.

# **6.29.1 Monitoring Structure**

|            | Air Conditioning Control Relay |   |  |           |           |            |          |                   |  |  |  |  |
|------------|--------------------------------|---|--|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|-------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/ | Fault                          | Monitoring Strategy                     | Malfunction                              | Threshold | Secondary | Enable     | Time     | MIL               |  |  |  |  |
| System     | Codes                          | Description                             | Criteria                                 | value     | Parameter | Conditions | Required |                   |  |  |  |  |
| Low input  |                                | Rationality, relay versus drive circuit | Relay on but ECM is requesting relay off |           | Disable:  | P1609      | 1.3s     | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |
| High input |                                | Rationality, relay versus drive circuit | Relay off but ECM is requesting relay on |           | Disable:  | P1609      | 1.3s     | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |  |  |

# **6.29.2 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 127 of 152



#### 6.30 Park/Neutral Switch

During the engine crank operation if the park/neutral input is low, with the CAN signal from the transmission indicating park/neutral is selected; the low fault timer is enabled. When the low fault timer reaches the calibrated time, the low fault flag is set. If the park/neutral input is high, and the vehicle is detected as moving with an appropriate engine load, then the high fault timer will be enabled. When the high fault timer reaches the calibrated time, the high fault flag is set.

# **6.30.1 Monitoring Structure**

|                  | Park/Neutral Switch |                            |                     |              |  |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|--------------|--|----------------------|----------------------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/       | Fault               | Monitoring Strategy        | Malfunction         | Threshold    | Secondary  | Enable               | Time                 | MIL     |  |  |  |  |
| System           | Codes               | Description                | Criteria            | value        | Parameter  | Conditions           | Required             |         |  |  |  |  |
| Park/neutral     | P1516               | Malfunction during driving |                     | Park/neutral | Vehicle speed  | >= 9 <= 160 mph      | 5s                   | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| switch high      | P0851 (2005         |                            | during driving      |              | Engine speed   | 1500 to 4000 RPM     |                      | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| Input            | model year X-       |                            |                     |              | Engine Coolant Temperature                             | >= -30 °C            |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
| Park/neutral     | Type)               |                            |                     |              | Transmission type                                      | Automatic            |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
| switch low       |                     |                            |                     |              | Engine load  | > 0.4 g/revolutions  |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
| Input (2004      |                     |                            |                     |              |  |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
| model year)      |                     |                            |                     | Disable:     | C4407 C4445 C4455 C44                                  | <br>                 | <br> 400   D0400   I | 00446   |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     | Disable.     | C1137, C1145, C1155, C116<br>P0117, P0118, P0125, P012 |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P0606, P0610, P0616, P061                              |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P0705, P0706, P0709, P071                              |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P0730, P0731, P0732, P073                              |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P0750, P0753, P0755, P075                              |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P0773, P0780, P0781, P078                              |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P0829, P1104, P1245, P124                              |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P1642, P1643, P1719, P17                               | 74, P1783, P1796, P1 | 797, P1798, F        | 21799   |  |  |  |  |
| Park/neutral     | P1517               | Malfunction during         | Park/neutral during | Park/neutral | Gear selected  | 0 or 2               | 0.256s               | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| switch low input |                     | starting                   | starting            |              | Actual gear  | 0                    |                      | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| (2001 to 2003    |                     |                            |                     |              |  |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
| model year)      |                     |                            |                     | D: 11        | Doors Books Books Books                                | <br>                 | . Dolloo Doll        |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P0335, P0336, P0118, P0117, I                          |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P0101, P0104, P1643, P1637, I                          | 20603, P1609, P0128  | s, P0616, P06        | 17,     |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P1799, P1224,  |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |
|                  |                     |                            |                     |              | P1229  |                      |                      |         |  |  |  |  |

# **6.30.2 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 128 of 152



#### 6.31 Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor Monitor

During ignition on conditions, the voltages from the two-track APP sensor are monitored. If the input voltage stays above a calibration value for more than a calibratable period, the high input failure judgment is made. If the input voltage stays below a calibration value for more than a calibratable period, the low input failure judgment is made. If the angle obtained from sensor 1 differs from the angle obtained from sensor 2 by more than a calibratable amount for more than a calibration period a range/performance failure judgment is made.

# **6.31.1 Monitoring Structure**

|                    | Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor |                       |                   |                |                 |               |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/         | Fault                             | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction       | Threshold      | Secondary       | Enable        | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |  |
| System             | Codes                             | Description           | Criteria          | value          | Parameter       | Conditions    | Required |         |  |  |  |  |
| APP circuit 1 low  | P1122                             | Out of range check    | Output voltage    | < 0.35 volts   |                 | Ignition on   | 01s      | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| input              |                                   |                       |                   |                |                 |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| APP circuit 1 high | P1123                             | Out of range check    | Output voltage    | > 4.9 volts    |                 | Ignition on   | 0.1s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| input              |                                   |                       |                   |                |                 |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| APP circuit 2 low  | P1215                             | Out of range check    | Output voltage    | < 0.10 volts   |                 | Ignition on   | 0.1s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| input              |                                   |                       |                   |                |                 |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| APP circuit 2 high | P1216                             | Out of range check    | Output voltage    | > 4.55 volts   |                 | Ignition on   | 0.1s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| input              |                                   |                       |                   |                |                 |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| ( )                | P1344                             | Rationality of 1 to 2 | Signal 1 versus 2 | See table DDS1 |                 | Ignition on   | 0.1s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| range/performance  |                                   |                       |                   |                | Battery voltage | 9 to 18 volts |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |                                   |                       |                   |                | Disable:        | P1241, P1242  |          |         |  |  |  |  |

|                    | Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor - X-Type 2005 Model Year |                       |                   |                 |                 |               |          |         |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/         | Fault  | Monitoring Strategy   | Malfunction       | Threshold       | Secondary       | Enable        | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |  |
| System             | Codes  | Description           | Criteria          | value           | Parameter       | Conditions    | Required |         |  |  |  |  |
| APP circuit 1 low  | P0227  | Out of range check    | Output voltage    | < 0.35 volts    |                 | Ignition on   | 01s      | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| input              |  |                       |                   |                 |                 |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| APP circuit 1 high | P0228  | Out of range check    | Output voltage    | > 4.9 volts     |                 | Ignition on   | 0.1s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| input              |  |                       |                   |                 |                 |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| APP circuit 2 low  | P2122  | Out of range check    | Output voltage    | < 0.10 volts    |                 | Ignition on   | 0.1s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| input              |  |                       |                   |                 |                 |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| APP circuit 2 high | P2123  | Out of range check    | Output voltage    | > 4.55 volts    |                 | Ignition on   | 0.1s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| input              |  |                       |                   | > 4.9V (2008MY) |                 |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| ( )                | P0226  | Rationality of 1 to 2 | Signal 1 versus 2 | See table DDS1  |                 | Ignition on   | 0.1s     | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| range/performance  |  |                       |                   |                 | Battery voltage | 9 to 18 volts |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
|                    |  |                       |                   |                 | Disable:        | P1241, P1242  |          |         |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 129 of 152



| DDS1                  |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|--|
| Pedal angle (degrees) | 0    | 1    | 3    | 71   | 74   | 80   |  |  |  |
| Value (degrees)       | 12.8 | 13.6 | 13.7 | 13.9 | 11.6 | 11.6 |  |  |  |

**6.31.2 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 130 of 152



#### 6.32 Throttle Control

## 6.32.1 Sensor Power Supply Monitor

#### High/Low Input Failure

These are continuous monitors. The voltage from the supply is compared to a failure threshold defined in the software. If the voltage is below the low threshold, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds another threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored. If the voltage exceeds the high threshold defined in the software, then a timer starts to increment. Once this timer exceeds a threshold, then a failure flag is set and a DTC is stored.

#### Malfunction

The outputs from two Throttle Position sensors and one pedal demand sensor are checked. If they <u>ALL</u> fall below a threshold value then a counter is incremented, otherwise the counter is reset to zero. If the counter reaches a calibrated value, a failure judgment is made.

# 6.32.2 Analogue Ground Monitor

The output voltages from the following sensors are checked:

- Throttle Position sensor 1
- Throttle Position sensor 2
- APP sensor 2
- FTP sensor (on USA market cars)
- Intake Air Temperature sensor
- Engine Coolant Temperature sensor
- Intake Air Temperature sensor after charge air cooler (on supercharged cars)
- Fuel rail pressure sensor
- Intake manifold pressure sensor
- Oil temperature sensor

If they <u>all</u> fall below a threshold value then a counter is incremented, otherwise the counter is reset to zero. If the counter reaches a calibrated value a failure judgment is made.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 131 of 152



#### 6.32.3 Throttle Actuator Control Monitor

#### Throttle Actuator Control OBDII Position Error

During ignition on conditions the calculated target throttle voltage is compared to the actual Throttle Position sensor voltage. If the voltage of the target and actual throttle signal differ by more than a calibratable amount for more than a calibratable period a failure judgment is made.

#### Throttle Actuator Control OBDII Circuit Malfunction

During ignition on conditions, the throttle motor current signal is monitored by hardware. If an over current condition is detected for more than a calibratable period, a failure judgment is made. During ignition on conditions, the throttle motor current is monitored by software. If the throttle motor current is more than a calibratable period a failure judgment is made. During ignition on conditions, the PWM throttle motor duty is monitored. If 100% duty cycle is detected for more than a calibratable period a failure judgment is made.

# 6.32.4 Throttle Motor Relay Monitor

#### DC Motor Relay Off Failure

During ignition on the relay driver signal is compared with the relay output signal. If the ECM is commanding the relay on and detecting the relay as off for more than a calibratable period, a failure judgment is made.

#### DC Motor Relay On Failure

During ignition on the relay driver signal is compared with the relay output signal. If the ECM is commanding the relay off and detecting the relay as on for more than a calibratable period, a failure judgment is made.

# **6.32.5 Throttle Motor Relay Driver Monitor**

## DC Motor Relay Driver Off Failure

During ignition on the relay driver target flag is compared with the relay driver signal. If the ECM is commanding the relay on and detecting the relay driver as off for more than a calibration period, a failure judgment is made.

## DC Motor Relay Driver On Failure

After ignition off, the ECM sets the relay driver off. This is compared with the relay driver monitor. If the ECM is commanding the relay off and detecting the relay driver as on for more than a calibration period, a failure judgment is made.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 132 of 152



# 6.32.6 Throttle Return Spring Monitor

After ignition off, the throttle blade is moved by the throttle motor to a calibrated position. The motor is then turned off. The monitor checks that the throttle blade is moved by the return spring. If movement of less than a calibrated amount is detected, a failure judgment is made.

# **6.32.7 Throttle Limp Home Spring Monitor**

After ignition off, the throttle blade is moved by the throttle motor to a calibrated position. The motor is then turned off. The monitor checks that the throttle blade is moved by the limp-home spring. If movement of less than a calibrated amount is detected, a failure judgment is made.

## **6.32.8 Throttle Watchdog Monitor**

After ignition off, the watchdog pulse is stopped in order to check whether the throttle motor relay driver will be disabled. If the throttle motor relay driver command is detected on for more than a calibratable period, a failure judgment is made.

# **6.32.9 Monitoring Structure**

|                        | Throttle Control – Up to 2004 Model Year |                        |                      |               |                     |               |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------|--|------------------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|---------------|----------------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Component/             | Fault                                    | Monitoring Strategy    | Malfunction          | Threshold     | Secondary           | Enable        | Time           | MIL     |  |  |  |  |
| System                 | Codes                                    | Description            | Criteria             | value         | Parameter           | Conditions    | Required       |         |  |  |  |  |
| Throttle control       | P1224                                    | Rationality sensor out | Sensor out v target  | > 1.001 volts |                     | Ignition on   | See table THC1 | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| position error         | P2119 (2005                              | versus target          | difference           | >= 1v (2004   | Battery voltage     | 9 to 18 volts |                | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | model year X-                            |                        |                      | model year)   |                     |               |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|                        | Type)                                    | 0.5                    |                      | 00            |                     |               | 0.5            | o D :   |  |  |  |  |
|                        | P1229                                    | .,                     | Number of times over | 30            | D = # = =   # = = - | Ignition on   |                | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
| circuit<br>malfunction | P2118 (2005<br>model year X-             | current by hardware    | current              |               | Battery voltage     | 9 to 18 volts |                | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |
| manunction             | Type)                                    |                        |                      |               |                     |               |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|                        |  | 2) Detection of over   | Current              | 8.3A          |                     |               | 15s            |         |  |  |  |  |
|                        |  | current by software    |                      | >= 8A (2004   |                     |               |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|                        |  |                        |                      | model year)   |                     |               |                |         |  |  |  |  |
|                        |  | 3) Duty 100% failure   | 100% duty cycle      | 100%          |                     | Ignition on   | See table THC2 | 2 Drive |  |  |  |  |
|                        |  |                        |                      |               | Battery voltage     | 9 to 18 volts |                | Cycles  |  |  |  |  |

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 133 of 152



|   |       |  | Throttle Control – U  | p to 2004 Mc   | odel Year  |   |          |                   |
|---|-------|--|---|--|--|---|----------|-------------------|
| Component/  | Fault | Monitoring Strategy  | Malfunction   | Threshold  | Secondary  | Enable  | Time     | MIL               |
| System  | Codes | Description  | Criteria  | value  | Parameter  | Conditions  | Required |                   |
| Throttle control sensor power supply malfunction      | P1240 | TP, FTP, MAP sensor, Fuel rail pressure sensor voltage   | Sensor output voltages:<br>Pedal position<br>TP 1<br>TP 2<br>FTP          | < 0.35 volts<br>< 0.35 volts<br>< 0.35 volts<br>< 0.2 volts  |  | Ignition on   | 3s       | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|   |       |  | MAP sensor<br>Fuel rail pressure<br>A/C pressure                          | < 0.3 volts<br>< 0.4 volts<br>< 0.3 volts  |  |   |          |                   |
| Throttle control low input                            | P1241 | Out of range check   | Output voltage  | <= 3.0 volts   |  | Ignition on   | 3s       | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Throttle control high input                           | P1242 | Out of range check   | Output voltage  | >= 4.5 volts   |  | Ignition on   | 3s       | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Throttle control<br>analogue<br>ground<br>malfunction | P1243 |  | TP 1 TP 2 FTP IAT ECT Fuel rail pressure MAP Charge air cooler (S/C only) | >= 4.9 volts<br>>= 4.9 volts |  | Ignition on   | 1s       | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
| Throttle return<br>spring failure                     |       | Monitoring of throttle blade angle<br>when throttle motor turned off at<br>fully open throttle | Throttle blade movement   | < -0.6 degrees  Disable:   | Disable: Ignition Idle condition Throttle limp home Valve sensor offset adaptions Valve sensor normal judgment DC throttle motor Throttle over current Throttle DC motor relay P1609, P1224, P1229, P0 | Idling Not in limp home Complete Complete No failure No over current No failure | 0.760s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |
|   |       |  |   | Disable:   | P1609, P1224, P1229, P0-<br>P1631, P1611, P1633,P06  | 122, P0123, P0222,  |          | P1251,            |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 134 of 152



|  |       | Thrott   | tle Control – Up to 2             | 004 Model Ye             | ear - Continued   |   |  |                             |
|--|-------|--|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|---|---|--|-----------------------------|
| Component/   | Fault | Monitoring Strategy  | Malfunction                       | Threshold                | Secondary   | Enable  | Time   | MIL                         |
| System   | Codes | Description  | Criteria                          | value                    | Parameter   | Conditions  | Required   |                             |
| DC motor relay<br>off fail                               |       | Rationality, commanded versus actual   | Commanded versus actual           | Different                |   | Ignition on                                       | 0.352s<br>0.4s (V6 2004<br>model year)<br>0.5s (V8 2004<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles           |
| Throttle control DC motor relay on fail                  | P1658 |  |                                   |                          | Battery voltage<br>Disable:   | 9 to 18 volts<br>P0603                            | 0.496s<br>0.5s (2004 model<br>year)                                    | 2 Drive<br>Cycles           |
| Throttle control<br>DC motor relay<br>driver off failure | P1631 | Rationality, commanded versus actual   | Commanded versus actual           | Different                |   | Ignition on                                       | 0.352s<br>0.4s (V6 2004<br>model year)<br>0.5s (V8 2004<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles           |
| Throttle control DC motor relay driver on failure        | P1657 |  |                                   |                          | Battery voltage<br>Disable:   | 9 to 18 volts<br>P0603                            | 0.496s<br>0.5s (2004 model<br>year)                                    | 2 Drive<br>Cycles           |
| Throttle limp<br>home spring<br>failure                  | P1254 | Monitoring of throttle blade angle<br>when throttle motor turned off at<br>fully closed throttle | Throttle blade movement           | < +0.6 degrees  Disable: | Ignition Idle condition Throttle DC motor relay Throttle limp home Throttle motor over current Valve sensor offset adaptions Valve sensor normal judgment P1224, P1229, P0122, P0 | current<br>Complete<br>Complete<br>123, P0222, P0 |  | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>P1631, |
| L  |       |  |                                   | 1                        | P1611, P1633, P0607, P2   |   |  | L                           |
|  | P1634 |  | Watchdog pulse train not          | > 1 cycle                | Throttle DC meter driver  | Ignition on                                       | 0.304s   | 2 Drive                     |
| watchdog circuit<br>failure                              |       | pulse train  | present when throttle relay<br>on |                          | Throttle DC motor driver Disable:   | No failure<br>P1609, P1657                        |  | Cycles                      |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 135 of 152



|                  | Throttle Control – From 2004 Model Year |                     |                  |              |           |             |          |         |  |  |  |
|------------------|---|---------------------|------------------|--------------|-----------|-------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|
| Component/       | Fault                                   | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction      | Threshold    | Secondary | Enable      | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |
| System           | Codes                                   | Description         | Criteria         | value        | Parameter | Conditions  | Required |         |  |  |  |
| Throttle control | P1240                                   | Out of range check  | Pedal position 2 | < 0.35 volts |           | Ignition on | 3s       | 2 Drive |  |  |  |
| sensor power     |   |                     | TP 1             | < 0.35 volts |           |             |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |
| supply           |   |                     | TP 2             | < 0.35 volts |           |             |          |         |  |  |  |
| malfunction      |   |                     |                  |              |           |             |          |         |  |  |  |

|                  | Throttle Control – 2005 Model Year X-Type |                                  |                             |              |                          |              |          |         |  |  |  |
|------------------|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|--------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|
| Component/       | Fault                                     | Monitoring Strategy              | Malfunction                 | Threshold    | Secondary                | Enable       | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |
| System           | Codes                                     | Description                      | Criteria                    | value        | Parameter                | Conditions   | Required |         |  |  |  |
| Throttle control | P0561                                     | Out of range check               | Pedal position 2            | < 0.35 volts |                          | Ignition on  | 3s       | 2 Drive |  |  |  |
| sensor power     |   |                                  | TP 1                        | < 0.35 volts |                          |              |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |
| supply           |   |                                  | TP 2                        | < 0.35 volts |                          |              |          |         |  |  |  |
| malfunction      |   |                                  |                             |              |                          |              |          |         |  |  |  |
| Throttle control | P0562                                     | Out of range check               | Output voltage              | <= 3.0 volts |                          | Ignition on  | 3s       | 2 Drive |  |  |  |
| low input        |   |                                  |                             |              |                          |              |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |
| Throttle control | P0563                                     | Out of range check               | Output voltage              | >= 4.5 volts |                          | Ignition on  | 3s       | 2 Drive |  |  |  |
| high input       |   |                                  |                             |              |                          |              |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |
| Throttle         | P2107                                     | Rationality of throttle watchdog | Watchdog pulse train not    | > 1 cycle    |                          | Ignition on  | 0.304s   | 2 Drive |  |  |  |
| watchdog circuit |   | pulse train                      | present when throttle relay |              | Throttle DC motor driver | No failure   |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |
| failure          |   |                                  | is on                       |              | Battery voltage          | 9V to 18V    |          |         |  |  |  |
|                  |   |                                  |                             |              | Disable:                 | P1609, P1657 |          |         |  |  |  |

| THC1   |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Battery voltage (v)                              | 6.48  | 8.98  | 9.06  | 12.03 |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage deviation for failure judgment (seconds) | 0.992 | 0.992 | 0.192 | 0.192 |  |  |  |  |  |

| THC2                                |        |        |                    |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Battery voltage (v)                 | 6.48   | 8.98   | 9.06               |  |  |  |  |  |
| Time for failure judgment (seconds) | 10.000 | 10.000 | 0.352 (1.248 (V8)) |  |  |  |  |  |

**6.32.10 Drive Cycle Information** The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 136 of 152



# 6.33 Intake Manifold Tuning Valve System

When the entry conditions have been met, the control module checks the commanded versus actual position of the Intake Manifold Tuning (IMT) valves. If they are not matched, a timer is started. If at the end of the set time the commanded and actual positions of the IMT valves do not match then the relevant DTC is flagged and the IMT valve affected is disabled.

# **6.33.1 Monitoring Structure**

|                | Intake Manifold Tuning Valve (V6 Only) |                     |                         |           |                 |            |          |         |  |  |  |
|----------------|--|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------|------------|----------|---------|--|--|--|
| Component/     | Fault                                  | Monitoring Strategy | Malfunction             | Threshold | Secondary       | Enable     | Time     | MIL     |  |  |  |
| System         | Codes                                  | Description         | Criteria                | value     | Parameter       | Conditions | Required |         |  |  |  |
| IMT valve 1    | P1549                                  | Hardware check      | Commanded versus actual | Different | Duty cycle      | 10 to 90%  | 10s      | 2 Drive |  |  |  |
| low/high input |  |                     |                         |           | Battery voltage | >10 volts  |          | Cycles  |  |  |  |
|                | P1532                                  |                     |                         |           | Disable:        | P1609      |          |         |  |  |  |
| low/high input |  |                     |                         |           |                 |            |          |         |  |  |  |

# **6.33.2 Drive Cycle Information**

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 137 of 152



#### 6.34 Generator Monitor

# 6.34.1 Generator Charge Line Monitor (V6 Only)

The generator used with the V6 engine can operate in two output modes. The high charge mode provides an output of 15.3 volts, whilst the low charge mode provides an output of 13.6 volts. This monitor checks the output of the generator to confirm it matches the mode selected. When the entry conditions have been met the rationality of the actual charge mode is compared to the commanded mode, if they do not match then a timer is started. If at the end of the timed period the commanded and actual modes still do not match the relevant DTC is flagged.

## 6.34.2 Generator Field Line Failure (V6 Only)

Once the entry conditions have been met, the ECM checks the duty cycle of the generator field line against pre-defined thresholds. If the duty cycle is outside the threshold limits for more than a defined period then the field line failure DTC is logged.

#### 6.34.3 Charging System/Generator Load Failure

On V6 engines, this monitor checks the charge line for irrational behavior, these being charge line off when engine running and charge line on when the engine is not running. If either of the above conditions exist for more than a predefined time then the DTC is set and the charge warning lamp is illuminated.

The V8 engine uses an alternative strategy due to differences in the generator used. This generator provides a variable voltage output dependent on the temperature of the generator itself. Once the entry conditions have been satisfied, the average charge voltage over a predefined time is checked. If this falls below a defined threshold value then the DTC is logged and the charge warning lamp is illuminated.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 138 of 152



# **6.34.4 Monitoring Structure**

|                    | Generator Monitor |                                |                            |                   |                  |                   |                 |              |  |  |  |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|--|--|--|
| Component/         | Fault             | Monitoring Strategy            | Malfunction                | Threshold         | Secondary        | Enable            | Time            | MIL          |  |  |  |
| System             | Codes             | Description                    | Criteria                   | value             | Parameter        | Conditions        | Required        |              |  |  |  |
| Charge line low    | P1146             | Rationality of charge mode     | Requested high mode        | Regulator in low  | Battery voltage  | > 10 volts        | 1.3s            | 2 Drive      |  |  |  |
| input              |                   | versus requested mode          | against actual mode        | mode              |                  |                   |                 | Cycles       |  |  |  |
| Charge line        | P1244             | Rationality of charge mode     | Requested low mode         | Regulator in high | Battery voltage  | > 10 volts        | 1.3s            | 2 Drive      |  |  |  |
| high input         |                   | versus requested mode          | against actual mode        | mode              |                  |                   |                 | Cycles       |  |  |  |
| Field line failure | P1629             | Generator output duty cycle    | Driver duty outside valid  | < 5% or > 45%     | Battery voltage  | > 10 volts        | 0.320s          | 2 Drive      |  |  |  |
|                    |                   | rationality                    | duty range                 |                   | Engine RPM       | < 200 RPM         |                 | Cycles       |  |  |  |
|                    |                   |                                |                            |                   | Ignition switch  | On                |                 |              |  |  |  |
| 0 0                |                   | Charge line status rationality | Charge monitor line off    |                   | Ignition switch  | On                | 5s              | 2 Drive      |  |  |  |
| , ,                | (V6)              |                                | when engine running        |                   | Battery voltage  | > 10 volts        |                 | Cycles       |  |  |  |
| or load failure    |                   |                                |                            |                   | After start time | > 1.28s           |                 |              |  |  |  |
|                    |                   |                                | Charge monitor line on     |                   | Ignition switch  | On                | 0.320s          | 2 Drive      |  |  |  |
|                    |                   |                                | when engine not running    |                   | Battery voltage  | > 10 volts        |                 | Cycles       |  |  |  |
|                    |                   |                                |                            | 0.7               | Engine speed     | < 200 RPM         |                 | o <b>n</b> : |  |  |  |
|                    |                   | Regulator control rationality  | Voltage difference between | < 0.7 volts       | Engine RPM       | > 1000 while      | > 20s           | 2 Drive      |  |  |  |
|                    |                   |                                | high and low charge modes  |                   | Charge mode      | Low for 10s and   |                 | Cycles       |  |  |  |
|                    | D4000             |                                |                            | 40.0              | E : DDM          | High for 10s      | 4.5             | o D :        |  |  |  |
|                    |                   | Continuous voltage rationality | , , ,                      | < 13.9 volts      | Engine RPM       | > 650             | 15s             | 2 Drive      |  |  |  |
|                    | (v8)              |                                | below limit                |                   | Charge mode      | Low               | <br>            | Cycles       |  |  |  |
|                    |                   |                                |                            |                   | Disable:         | P0335, P0336, P16 | 509, P1146, P12 | 244,         |  |  |  |
|                    |                   |                                |                            |                   |                  | P1629, P1632      |                 |              |  |  |  |

**6.34.5 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 139 of 152



# 6.35 Engine Control Module

The engine management system is centered on an ECM. The ECM receives input signals from engine sensors to evaluate engine-operating conditions. In addition, the ECM communicates with other powertrain systems and vehicle systems. The ECM then processes the sensor information and the information received from other systems using programmed software strategies and issues control output signals to the engine and emission control functional systems.

At it's very basic level of control the ECM:

- Takes engine speed and load input signals.
- Applies correction factor inputs and emissions control feedback signals.
- Processes the signals to access pre-programmed software strategies.
- Outputs control signals to the various engine and emission components.
- During this process, the ECM employs diagnostic tests to monitor and report engine management system faults. Faults are stored in ECM memory as codes. Technician access to the DTCs and data is gained through a diagnostic data link.

# 6.35.1 ECM Control Relay Monitor

After the vehicle ignition has been turned off, the ECM can maintain its own power source by holding on the ECM relay. The ECM turns itself off by releasing this relay. If it has done this but is still operating then there is a fault with the ECM control relay circuit and this is logged.

#### **6.35.2 Main Processor Monitor**

At processor initialization, this monitor checks whether the Read Only Memory (ROM) checksum for the sub processor monitor is OK. If the checksums do not agree, a failure judgment is made. The same check is performed for the Random Access Memory (RAM) area for the sub processor monitor. If the checksums do not agree, a failure judgment is made. During ignition on, the main processor mirror checks certain sequence, RAM and ROM calculations with the sub processor. If the mirror checks do not agree, a failure judgment is made.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 140 of 152



#### 6.35.3 Sub Processor Monitor

This monitor duplicates various sections of the throttle control functions performed by the sub processor in the main processor and continuously compares the results during ignition on. In case of the sub processor value differing from the main processor value by more than a calibratable amount, a failure judgment is made.

The following functions are checked:

- Throttle target calculation.
- Throttle offset voltage differential failure.
- Throttle target voltage differential failure.
- Throttle valve angle input.
- Pedal angle input.
- Digital servo control.
- Total sub processor calculation.
- Speed control mode cancel.
- Sub processor self-check.

# 6.35.4 Battery Back Up Monitor

The ECM supply input status is checked after the system initialization with ignition applied. If the supply input is low, the status flag is set. When the ignition is cycled the fault timer is incremented until the timer reaches the calibrated time, thus the fault flag is set.

## 6.35.5 Processor Communications Monitor

At regular intervals, the validity of all RAM data is checked. Any corruption of RAM data will result in a monitoring failure judgment being made. If all RAM data is verified then a monitoring normal judgment is made.

## 6.35.6 Engine Control Module Keep Alive Memory Monitor

Every data value stored in the Electrically Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory (EEPROM) is duplicated in a 'mirror' EEPROM location. If all the data values and their mirrors match, a normal judgment is made. If any of the EEPROM data values differ from the value stored in their mirror location then a failure judgment is made and P0603 is logged.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 141 of 152



# **6.35.7 Monitoring Structure**

|   |  |   | Engine Co   | ntrol Module  |   |  |                  |                                      |
|---|--|---|---|---|---|--|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Component/<br>System                            | Fault<br>Codes                                   | Monitoring Strategy Description                 | Malfunction<br>Criteria   | Threshold value   | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions                                       | Time<br>Required | MIL                                  |
|   | P0560  | No permanent power to ECM                       |   | Not set   | Processor<br>communications<br>Battery Voltage  | Main and sub processor communications. Correct 9 to 18V    | 10s              | 2 Drive<br>Cycles                    |
| Keep alive memory<br>error<br>ECM control relay |  | Mirror check Relay operating when not requested | Mirror check<br>ECM relay energized                             | Not correct   | Disable: Ignition on Disable: Ignition switch Disable:  | P1642, P1609 P1642, P1609 Accessory on, ignition off P1609 | 1.024s<br>7.2s   | 1 Drive<br>Cycle<br>1 Drive<br>Cycle |
| ECM processor communications error              | P1609  | Internal communications check                   | Keyword   | Not correct   | Ignition on   |  | 5s               | 2 Drive<br>Cycles                    |
| Sub processor failure                           | P1611<br>P0607<br>(2005<br>model year<br>X-Type) | Throttle target calculation failure             | Sub processor throttle target calculation versus Main processor |   | Speed control DC motor relay Processor to processor communications.                               | Not active<br>On<br>No failure                             | 0.128s           | 2 Drive<br>Cycles                    |
|   | , ( ) , ( )                                      | Throttle offset voltage differential failure    |   | > 5 volts<br>>=0.40 volts (2004<br>model year)  | DC motor relay Processor to processor communications.   | On<br>No failure   | 0.128s           | 2 Drive<br>Cycles                    |
|   |  | Throttle target differential failure            | Differential of target voltage too large                        | > 5 volts   | Traction, acceleration and power limitation DC motor relay Processor to processor communications. | Not active<br>On<br>No failure                             | 0.128s           | 2 Drive<br>Cycles                    |
|   |  | Throttle valve angle input failure              | processor   | > 4.58 degrees n/c<br>> 5.48 degrees<br>(2004 model year)<br>> 10.66 degrees<br>(2005 model year<br>X-Type) | DC motor relay<br>Processor to processor  | On<br>No failure   | 0.128s           | 2 Drive<br>Cycles                    |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 142 of 152



|                   |       |                               | Engine Co                   | ntrol Module       |                         |                   |          |         |
|-------------------|-------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|----------|---------|
| Component/        | Fault | Monitoring Strategy           | Malfunction                 | Threshold          | Secondary               | Enable            | Time     | MIL     |
| System            | Codes | Description                   | Criteria                    | value              | Parameter               | Conditions        | Required |         |
|                   |       | Pedal angle input failure     | Sub processor pedal angle   | > 8.02 degrees n/c | DC motor relay          | On                | 0.128s   | 2 Drive |
|                   |       |                               | calculation versus main     |                    | Processor to processor  | No failure        |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       |                               | processor                   | (2004 model year)  | communications          |                   |          |         |
|                   |       | Digital servo control failure | Throttle sensor 1 output    | > see table SUB1   | DC motor relay          | On                | 0.128s   | 2 Drive |
|                   |       |                               | voltage versus final target |                    | Processor to processor  | No failure        |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       |                               | voltage                     |                    | communications          |                   |          |         |
|                   |       | Total sub processor           | Throttle valve angle versus | 1.07 degrees       | DC motor relay          | On                | 0.128s   | 2 Drive |
|                   |       | calculation failure           | pedal angle                 |                    |                         |                   |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       | Speed control mode cancel     | Speed control active with   | 0.496s             | DC motor relay          | On                | 0.5s     | 2 Drive |
|                   |       | failure                       | P/N switch set or brake     |                    | Processor to processor  | No failure        |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       |                               | switch set or park-brake on |                    | communications          |                   |          |         |
|                   |       |                               | or vehicle speed < 16.1mph  |                    |                         |                   |          |         |
|                   | P1633 | RAM/ROM checks                | Failure detected in RAM     |                    | Battery voltage         | 9 to 18V          | 0.08s    | 2 Drive |
| processor failure |       |                               | check or ROM check or       |                    |                         |                   |          | Cycles  |
|                   |       |                               | sequence check or mirror    |                    |                         |                   |          |         |
| E014 116          | 54050 | A 1151                        | data check                  | 0.400              |                         | 0.01/ 4.51/       |          |         |
| •                 | P1656 | Amplifier output voltage      | Output voltage versus 4 X   |                    | Amplifier input voltage | >= 0.3 V <=1.15 V | 0.496s   | 2 Drive |
| failure for valve |       | rationality                   | input voltage               | difference         |                         |                   |          | Cycles  |
| sensor            |       |                               |                             |                    | Disable:                | P1241, P1242      |          |         |

| SUB1 (for P1611 or P0607)    |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|
| Final target voltage (volts) | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   |  |  |  |  |
| Deviation voltage (Volts)    | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 4.0 |  |  |  |  |

**6.35.8 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 143 of 152



# 6.36 Communications Network Monitors

If the ECM does not receive any messages from the required module for a set time, then a fault is flagged.

# **6.36.1 Monitoring Structure**

|  |                |                                   | Communication                               | s Network Mo    | onitors   |  |                                   |  |
|--|----------------|-----------------------------------|---|-----------------|---|--|-----------------------------------|--|
| Component/<br>System                                     | Fault<br>Codes | Monitoring Strategy Description   | Malfunction<br>Criteria                     | Threshold value | Secondary<br>Parameter  | Enable<br>Conditions   | Time<br>Required                  | MIL  |
| CAN link<br>ECM/Anti-lock<br>Braking System<br>(ABS)     | P1637          | No CAN signal from ABS<br>module  | ABS CAN identifier not received             | No ID           | Crank request flag Battery Voltage  Disable:  | Not set<br>>=10V<br>Ignition on<br>P1642, P1609              | 2.5s<br>1.5s (2004<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles  |
| CAN link ECM/  | P1638          | No CAN signal from IPK            | IPK CAN identifier not received             | No ID           | Crank request flag Battery Voltage Disable:   | Not set<br>>=10V<br>Ignition on<br>P1642, P1609              | 2.5s<br>1.5s (2004<br>model year) | 1 Drive<br>Cycle   |
| CAN link failure   | P1642          | CAN circuit failure               | All modes missing                           | No IDs          | Crank request flag CAN bus off line flag Communications failure flag TCM mode missing flag Transmission ABS mode missing flag Climate control mode missing flag IPK mode missing flag Gearshift selector module mode missing flag Adaptive speed control mode missing flag Disable: | Not set Set Set Auto Set Set Set Set Set                     | 2.5s<br>1.5s (2004<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles<br>1 Drive<br>Cycle<br>(2004<br>model<br>year) |
| CAN link<br>ECM/Transmiss<br>ion Control<br>Module (TCM) | P1643          | No CAN signals from TCM<br>module | TCM CAN identifier not received             | No ID           | Transmission Crank request flag Battery Voltage  Disable:   | Automatic<br>Not set<br>>=10V<br>Ignition On<br>P1642, P1609 | 2.5s<br>1.5s (2004<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles  |
| CAN link<br>ECM/Rear<br>Climate Control<br>(RCC)         | P1699          | No CAN signals from RCC<br>module | Climate control CAN identifier not received | No ID           | Crank request flag<br>Battery Voltage<br>Disable:   | Not set<br>>=10V<br>Ignition On<br>P1642, P1609              | 2.5s<br>1.5s (2004<br>model year) | 2 Drive<br>Cycles  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 144 of 152



**6.36.2 Drive Cycle Information**The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 *Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle*) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 145 of 152



# 7 Anti-lock Braking System

This section includes the ABS codes that are reported as part of the vehicle emissions certification.

## 7.1 Wheel Speed Sensors

The ABS modulates brake pressure on each wheel independently to maintain vehicle stability during braking.

The ABS continually monitors the rotational velocity of each wheel anytime the ignition switch is in the on position and determines if a tire is skidding when the brakes are applied. Only then does the ABS intervene to modulate the brake pressure to the skidding wheel. The modulation continues until the wheel rotates freely. The brake pressure is then restored and the modulate/restore cycle is repeated whenever skidding is detected. This cycle occurs at a rate of several times per second.

The ABS module is capable of detecting the following system conditions:

- Hydraulic valve failure.
- Wheel speed sensor failure.
- ABS power relay short circuit.
- Interconnect failures to the ABS sensors, power and ground to the ABS module.
- Over/under voltage conditions.

The ABS provides failure messages, via the ABS indicator, in the ipk. Failure of the ABS module, for whatever reason, will not compromise the normal operation of the brake system.

# 7.1.1 Wheel Speed Sensor Monitoring (XJ Range, XK Range and S-Type)

The ABS system monitors all four wheel speed censors continuously. A number of checks are performed, the failure of any one will cause the ABS system to be disabled and the ABS warning lamp together with the MIL to be illuminated. The monitors are performed differently on the X-Type and, therefore, the description for this system is dealt with separately.

## Sensor Signal Current Out of Range

The current from each sensor is continually monitored against an upper and lower threshold. If the current is outside the threshold limits a counter is incremented and the check re-run. When the counter reaches its predefined limit the DTC for the appropriate wheel speed sensor is logged.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 146 of 152



#### Missing Wheel Speed Sensor Input

If any of the wheel speed signals is lost (assuming normal signals from the other three wheels) for more than 0.007 seconds, the DTC for the appropriate wheel speed sensor is logged.

### Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Continuously too Low

If the signal current from any wheel speed sensor is identified as being too low for more than a defined period then the DTC for the appropriate wheel speed sensor is logged.

#### Comparison of Maximum Wheel Speed Versus Minimum Wheel Speed

This monitor compares the difference in wheel speed of the sensors over a long period (180 seconds). If the difference between the maximum and minimum wheel speeds continuously exceeds the defined threshold the DTC for the appropriate wheel speed sensor is logged.

#### Wheel Speed Signal Changes Erratically

Erratic wheel speed signals are monitored by checking the variation in successive samples. If the difference in signal from each successive sample is greater than 15.5 mph or the signal interrupt is detected (no sample) then a software counter is incremented. If the counter reaches its defined limit the DTC for the appropriate wheel speed sensor is logged.

#### Periodic Drops of Wheel Speed Signal

At wheel speeds above 12.4 mph, each sensor is monitored for loss of wheel speed signal. If the signal is lost for more than 15 revolutions then the DTC is logged.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 147 of 152



# 7.1.2 Monitoring Structure

|   | Wheel Speed Sensors (XJ, XK8 and S-Type) |   |   |                            |                                  |  |  |                   |  |  |
|---|--|---|---|----------------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|-------------------|--|--|
| Component/<br>System                      | Fault<br>Codes                           | Monitoring Strategy Description                   | Malfunction<br>Criteria                                   | Threshold value            | Secondary<br>Parameter           | Enable<br>Conditions                             | Time<br>Required                             | MIL               |  |  |
| Right rear<br>wheel speed<br>plausibility | C1165                                    | Sensor signal current out of<br>range<br>or       | Sensor signal current                                     | >= 4.5 mA<br><= 20mA       | Supply voltage                   | 7.5 to 8.5 volts                                 | 19 software loops                            | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
|   | C1175                                    | Missing wheel speed sensor input or               |   |                            | Supply voltage                   | 7.5 to 8.5 volts                                 | 1 software loop<br>(approximately<br>0.007s) |                   |  |  |
|   | C1145                                    | Wheel speed sensor signal continuously too low or |   |                            | Supply voltage                   | 7.5 to 8.5 volts                                 | 1 software loop                              |                   |  |  |
| Left front wheel speed plausibility       | C1155                                    |   | Vehicle speed<br>or                                       | > 6.2 mph                  | Vmax.<br>Vmin1<br>Vmin2<br>Vmin3 | < 6.2 mph<br>< 1.2 mph<br>< 1.2 mph<br>< 1.2 mph | 180s   |                   |  |  |
|   |  |   | Vehicle speed<br>or                                       | > 9.3 mph                  | Vmax.<br>Vref.                   | < 4.3 mph<br>< 3.7 mph                           | 180s   |                   |  |  |
|   |  |   | Wheel speed<br>or   | <= 0.4 Vmax.               | Vmax.                            | > 9.3 mph  |  |                   |  |  |
|   |  |   | Wheel speed   | <= 0.6 Vmax.               | Vmax.                            | 24.8 mph   | 180s   |                   |  |  |
|   |  | Wheel speed signal changes erratically            | Erratic step of wheel speed or                            | Vx(n) – Vx(n-1) > 15.5 mph |                                  |  | 22 software loops                            |                   |  |  |
|   |  | or .  | Number of interrupts per<br>loop                          | > 40                       |                                  |  | 22 software loops                            |                   |  |  |
|   |  | Periodic drops of wheel speed                     |   |                            |                                  |  | 15 wheel revolutions.                        |                   |  |  |
|   |  | Long time monitoring of the ABS                   | Pressure reduction too long following pressure hold phase |                            | Wheel speed<br>Supply voltage    | > 12.4 mph<br>7.5 to 8.5 volts                   | 28s  |                   |  |  |

7.1.3 Drive Cycle Information
The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 148 of 152



# 7.1.4 Wheel Speed Sensor Monitoring (X-Type)

#### **Dynamic Monitoring**

The monitor runs when the vehicle speed reaches 24.8 mph. If any of the wheel speed signals is lost (assuming normal signals for the other 3 wheels) for more than 20 ms the DTC for the appropriate wheel speed sensor is logged.

#### Static Start-up Monitoring

This monitor checks for the loss of the wheel speed signal at ignition on. If any wheel speed signal is not present for more than 20 seconds then the appropriate DTC is logged.

#### **Drive-off High Speed**

This monitor checks for loss of a wheel speed sensor signal during rapid acceleration from being stationary. The monitor looks for one wheel speed signal being stuck at 0 mph when the other three are greater than 11 mph. If this situation occurs, a timer is started. If after 0.020 seconds the situation still exists then the DTC for the appropriate wheel speed sensor is logged.

#### **Drive-off Low Speed**

This monitor checks for the loss of a wheel speed sensor signal during slow acceleration from being stationary and during continued low speed driving. If the difference between the maximum and minimum wheel speed continuously exceeds any of the defined thresholds for more than 20 seconds the DTC for the appropriate wheel speed sensor is logged.

### Static Wheel Slip

This monitor compares the difference in the wheel speed of the sensors over a longer period of time (5 seconds) during normal driving. If the vehicle speed is below 62 mph, then the wheel speed sensors are checked for either the deviation of the two wheel speeds at either side of the vehicle being greater than 3.7 mph, or the deviation of the wheel speed at the front axle being greater than 6.2 mph. If at least one wheel is at 3 mph or lower, a wheel speed deviation of adjoining wheel of 7.4 mph is permitted. If the detected deviation exists for more than 5 seconds then the appropriate DTC is logged. If the vehicle speed is greater than 62 mph then the wheel speed sensors are checked for either the deviation of two wheels speeds at either side of the vehicle being greater than 6% or the deviation of wheel speeds at the front axle being greater then 2.5 mph +6%. If the detected deviation exists for more than 5 seconds then the appropriate DTC is logged.

#### Ohmic Monitoring

This monitor performs a static impedance check on each wheel speed sensor when the ignition is switched on. If the impedance of any sensor is outside of its defined limits, then the appropriate DTC is logged.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 149 of 152



# 7.1.5 Monitoring Structure

|   | Wheel Speed Sensors (X-Type) |  |  |                                       |   |                                  |                                   |   |  |  |
|---|------------------------------|--|--|---------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Component/<br>System<br>Right rear<br>wheel speed<br>plausibility | Fault<br>Codes<br>C1165      | Monitoring Strategy Description  Dynamic monitoring or Static start-up monitoring                    | Malfunction Criteria No wheel speed signal for: Wheel speed not present  | Threshold<br>value<br>0.010 to 0.020s | Secondary<br>Parameter<br>Vehicle speed | Enable<br>Conditions<br>24.8 mph | Time<br>Required<br>0.020s<br>20s | MIL 2 Drive Cycles 2 Drive                          |  |  |
| speed<br>plausibility   | C1175<br>C1145<br>C1155      | or<br>Sensor supply, signal quality<br>or<br>Drive–off high speed<br>or<br>Drive-off low speed<br>or | 1 wheel at 0 mph with 3 wheels at > 11 mph (V1 = fastest wheel)  V4 = slowest wheel)  V2>= 7.4 mph and  V3> 3 mph and  V4< 3 mph  or  V2>= 14.9 mph and  V3<= 3 mph  or  V3> 55.8 mph and  V4= Vmin  or  V1,V2,V3= 7.4 mph and  V4= Vmin |                                       |   |                                  | 0.240s<br>0.020s<br>20s           | Cycles 2 Drive Cycles 2 Drive Cycles 2 Drive Cycles |  |  |

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 150 of 152



| Wheel Speed Sensors (X-Type) continued |       |                         |  |  |           |            |          |                   |  |  |
|--|-------|-------------------------|--|--|-----------|------------|----------|-------------------|--|--|
| Component/                             | Fault | Monitoring Strategy     | Malfunction  | Threshold  | Secondary | Enable     | Time     | MIL               |  |  |
| System                                 | Codes | Description             | Criteria   | value  | Parameter | Conditions | Required |                   |  |  |
|  |       | Static wheel slip<br>or | *Deviation of the two wheel<br>side of the vehicle > 3.7 mp<br>axle > 6.2 mph<br>* If at least one wheel is at<br>wheel speed deviation of ac<br>7.4 mph is permitted<br>Deviation of two wheels speed<br>of vehicle > 6% or at the from | oh or at the front  3 mph or lower, a djoining wheels of eeds at either side | •         | < 62 mph   | 5s       | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
|  |       | Ohmic monitoring        | Broken Shorted to ground Short to supply voltage Short between sensor lines  |  |           |            | 0.280s   | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |

|                               | Wheel Speed Sensors (X-Type – 2008MY) |   |                                    |           |                                    |                       |          |                   |  |  |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------|-------------------|--|--|
| Component/                    | Fault                                 | Monitoring Strategy                         | Malfunction                        | Threshold | Secondary                          | Enable                | Time     | MIL               |  |  |
| System                        | Codes                                 | Description                                 | Criteria                           | value     | Parameter                          | Conditions            | Required |                   |  |  |
| Invalid signals<br>Front Left | C0031                                 | CAN signal 'error marker' received from ABS | ABS Unable to Transmit  Valid Data |           | Ignition Switch<br>Battery Voltage | On for at least 2.0 s | 5.0 s    | 2 Drive<br>Cycles |  |  |
| Front Right                   |                                       |   |                                    |           | Engine Start                       | Not in progress       |          |                   |  |  |
| Rear Left                     |                                       |   |                                    |           |                                    |                       |          |                   |  |  |
| Rear Right                    | C003A                                 |   |                                    |           |                                    |                       |          |                   |  |  |

# 7.1.6 Drive Cycle Information

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar CarsRevision Date: April 2008Page 151 of 152



# 7.2 Control Module Failure

The ABS control module runs a number of internal power on initialization self-tests when the ignition is switched on. If any of the self-tests fail then DTC C1137 is logged and the ABS is disabled.

# 7.2.1 Monitoring Structure

|                | Control Module |                          |                          |           |           |               |          |         |  |  |
|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|----------|---------|--|--|
| Component/     | Fault          | Monitoring Strategy      | Malfunction              | Threshold | Secondary | Enable        | Time     | MIL     |  |  |
| System         | Codes          | Description              | Criteria                 | value     | Parameter | Conditions    | Required |         |  |  |
| ABS control    | C1137          | Defective control module | Major ABS control module |           |           | Power applied | 0.7s     | 2 Drive |  |  |
| module failure |                |                          | internal fault           |           |           |               |          | Cycles  |  |  |

|                 | Control Module – X-Type |                        |                             |           |           |            |          |         |  |
|-----------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|---------|--|
| Component/      | Fault                   | Monitoring Strategy    | Malfunction                 | Threshold | Secondary | Enable     | Time     | MIL     |  |
| System          | Codes                   | Description            | Criteria                    | value     | Parameter | Conditions | Required |         |  |
| ABS control     | C1137                   | Long term interference | Interference on one or more |           |           |            |          | 2 Drive |  |
| module failure  |                         |                        | wheels                      |           |           |            |          | Cycles  |  |
| noise detection |                         |                        |                             |           |           |            |          |         |  |

# 7.2.2 Drive Cycle Information

The generic drive cycle (see 2.1 Generic OBD-II Drive Cycle) applies.

Jaguar Cars Revision Date: April 2008 Page 152 of 152